

Basic Hindi



BASIC HINDI



Rajiv Ranjan

Michigan State University Libraries
East Lansing



Basic Hindi by Rajiv Ranjan is licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial 4.0 International License](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/), except where otherwise noted.

Contents

Acknowledgments
xxi

Image Credits
xxii

Cover Images
xxii

Introduction
I

Chapter 1: Hindi Letters & Script

1.1 हृदल सवरुण वरुण "Hindi Vowel Letters"
Z
How to Write Vowel Letters
Z

1.2 हृदल वुडऑन वरुण "Hindi Consonant Letters"
I2
Writing Consonant Letters
I3
Half Consonants
26
Half "र" (R)
27

1.3 Dependent Vowels, and Vowel-Consonant Conjugation
29
Dependent Vowels
29
Consonants Cluster/Conjunct Consonants
3I

1.4 Nasal Sounds in Hindi
34
Nasal Sounds Video
34
Bindu/Anusvaar (ँ)
34
Chandrabindu (ँ)
35

1.5 Persian-Arabic Borrowed Letters
36

Table 9. List of Persian and Arabic borrowed letters in Hindi
36

1.6 Common Hindi Words and Phrases

38

Table of Common Hindi Words & Phrases

39

1.7 Extra/Optional online Materials

43

Practice Vowel Letters

43

Practice Consonant Letters

43

Hindi Letters Games

43

Chapter 2: Beginning Conversations

2.1 Review Concepts from Chapter 1

47

Review of Chapter 1

47

2.2 Greetings & Introductions

48

Greetings

48

Introductions

50

2.3 Informal Conversations

53

Reading: Informal Conversation Between Friends

53

Informal Conversation: Asking for Phone Number & eMail

54

2.4 Formal Conversations

57

Reading: Formal Conversation with a Hindi Teacher

57

2.5 Study Abroad

59

Formal Conversation: Study Abroad

59

2.6 Grammar: Gender and Number

62

Gender

62

Number

63

Vocabulary 5. Names of Fruits and Vegetables

68

2.7 Personal Pronouns with Verb "To be"

73

Verb "To be"

73

2.8 Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

79

Cultural Notes

79

Extra/Optional Online Materials

80

Chapter 3: परिवार "Family"

3.1 Review Concepts from Chapter 2

83

Vocabulary

83

Multiple Choice Questions on Gender, Number and Verb "to be"

83

बातचीत "Conversation"

83

3.2 Reading/Listening 1: मेरा परिवार

84

मेरा परिवार "My Family"

84

Vocabulary

85

परिवार के बारे में "About the family"

87

Reading

88

Listening

90

Writing/Speaking

90

3.3 Reading/Listening 2: वदिया का परवार

92

वदिया का परवार और उसके रशतदार “Vidya’s family and her relatives”

92

Vocabulary

93

Reading

98

Listening

98

Writing/Speaking

99

3.4 Study Abroad

100

Study Abroad Reading/Listening Activity

100

Reading: सीता का पत्र “Sita’s letter”

101

3.5 Grammar of Adjectives

104

Adjectives Video

104

Use of -स with adjectives

105

3.6 Apostrophe "S" ('s) in Hindi

108

Apostrophe "S" Video

108

Pronouns with का/की/के

109

3.7 Degree of Adjectives

111

Degree of Adjectives Video

111

Use of कुछ/जरा “a little” and ज्यादा/काफी “a lot”

111

3.8 "Wh-" Question/Interrogative Sentence

113

“Wh-” Questions Video

113

Formation of “Wh-” Question Sentences

113

3.9 Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

116

Cultural Notes

116

Extra/Optional Online Materials

116

Chapter 4: Describing Places

4.1 Review Concepts from Chapter 3

119

Vocabulary

119

Speaking

119

Grammar Review

119

Reading and Listening Comprehension

119

4.2 Reading/Listening 1: ऋतिक का घर

121

ऋतिक का घर “Hritik’s Home”

121

Vocabulary

122

Reading/Listening

124

Writing/Speaking

126

4.3 Reading/Listening 2: ऋतिक का कमरा

128

ऋतिक का कमरा “Hritik’s Room”

128

Vocabulary

129

Reading/Listening

131

Writing/Speaking

133

4.4 Reading/Listening 2: पीटर का शहर

134

पीटर का शहर “Peter’s Hometown”

135

Vocabulary

136

Reading/Listening

140

4.5 Study Abroad

144

Study Abroad Reading/Listening Activity

144

4.6 Post-positions

146

Post-Positions Video

146

Simple Post-positions

146

Compound Post-positions

147

4.7 Oblique Case

149

Oblique Case Video

149

Oblique Noun

149

Oblique Adjectives

150

Oblique Verbs

151

Oblique Pronouns

151

4.8 “There” Construction

153

“There” Construction Video

153

4.9 Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

155

Cultural Notes

155

Extra/Optional Online Materials

155

Chapter 5: Expressing Likes, Dislikes, Needs, and Possession

5.1 Review of Chapter 4

161

Vocabulary

161

Grammar

161

Reading

162

Listening

162

Speaking

162

5.2 Reading/Listening 1: फल और सब्जी की दुकान पर

163

फल और सब्जी की दुकान पर

163

Vocabulary

165

Reading

167

Listening

168

5.3 Reading/Listening 2: भोजनालय में

170

भोजनालय में

170

Vocabulary

171

Reading

172

Listening

174

5.4 Study Abroad

175

Study Abroad Reading/Listening Activity

176

5.5 Verb "To be" in the Past Tense

180

Past Tense of "To be" Video

180

Activity

181

5.6 Subject with को

182

Subject with को Video

182

पसंद “to like.”

182

नापसंद “to dislike.”

183

Activity

183

5.7 चाहिए “Need”

185

चाहिए “Need” Video

185

Activities

186

Other nouns/adjectives/verbs that need subject with को

187

Activities

187

5.8 Expressing Possession in Hindi

189

Expressing Possession Video

189

Activity

190

5.9 Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

191

Cultural Notes

191

Extra/Optional Online Materials

191

Chapter 6: Giving Instruction and Making Request

6.1 Review of Chapter 5

195

Vocabulary

195

Grammar

195

Reading/Listening

195

6.2 Reading/Listening 1: मेरा पसंदीदा खाना और इसे बनाने की वधि

198

मेरा पसंदीदा खाना और इसे बनाने की वधि “My favorite food and its recipe”

198

Reading

199

Listening

200

6.3 Reading/Listening 2: रास्ता बताना

202

रास्ता बताना “Giving Direction”

202

Reading

203

Listening

203

6.4 Reading/Listening 3: सोशल मीडिया पर खाता खोलना

205

सोशल मीडिया पर खाता खोलना “To open a social media account”

205

Reading

205

Listening

206

6.5 Study Abroad

208

Study Abroad Reading/Listening Activity

208

Reading

209

Listening

209

6.6 Verbs

211

Verb Video

211

List of Commonly Used Verbs

213

Activity

213

6.7 Imperative Construction

215

Imperative Construction Video

215

Forms of Imperative Construction Based on Three Different Forms of “You”

215

Giving Instruction and Command

216

Making Requests

216

Negation of Imperative Construction

217

Activities

217

6.8 Object with को and से

219

Object with को and से Video

219

को

219

से

220

Activity

220

6.9 Expressing Obligation and Suggestions

221

Expressing Obligation and Suggestions Video

221

Activities

221

6.10 Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

222

Cultural Notes

222

Extra/Optional Online Materials

222

Chapter 7: Expressing Present, Past, and Future Actions

7.1 Review of Chapter 6

227

Vocabulary

227

Grammar

227

Reading/Listening

227

7.2 Reading/Listening 1: दनिचर्या

232

दनिचर्या “Daily routine”

233

Reading

236

Listening

237

7.3 Reading/Listening 2: मरे शौक

239

मरे शौक “My hobbies”

240

Reading

242

Listening

242

7.4 Reading/Listening 3: त्योहार

244

त्योहार “Festival”

244

Reading

245

Listening

245

7.5 Study Abroad

247

Study Abroad Reading/Listening Activity

247

7.6 Grammar: Tense and Aspect

251

Tense

251

Aspect

251

Activity

252

7.7 Grammar: The present and past habitual tense

253

The Present and Past Habitual Tense Video

253

Structure

253

Negation of Habitual Aspect

254

Uses of Habitual Aspect

254

Uses of the Past Habitual Tense

257

7.8 The Present and Past Progressive Tense

259

The Present and Past Progressive Tense Video

259

Structure

259

Negation of Progressive Aspect

260

Uses of Progressive Aspect

260

7.9 Grammar: Simple Future Tense

263

Simple Future Tense Video

263

Structure

263

Negation of Progressive Aspect

264

Uses of Future Tense

264

7.10 Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

266

Cultural Notes

266

Extra/Optional Online Materials

266

Chapter 8: Talking About the Past and Completed Actions

8.1 Review of Chapter 7

273

Vocabulary

273

Reading and Grammar

273

8.2 Reading/Listening 1: छुट्टियों के बाद

274

छुट्टियों के बाद “After the vacation”

274

Reading

275

Listening

275

8.3 Reading/Listening 2: पत्र लेखन

277

पत्र लेखन “Letter writing”

278

Reading

280

Listening

281

8.4 Reading/Listening 3: शुभकामनाएँ

282

शुभकामनाएँ “Well Wishes”

282

Reading

283

Listening

284

8.5 Study Abroad

286

Study Abroad Reading/Listening Activity

287

8.6 Grammar: Perfective Aspect

292

Perfective Aspect Video

292

Irregular Verbs in Perfective Aspect

293

Perfective Aspect with Intransitive Verbs

293

Use of ने

295

Verb-Agreement of Transitive and Ditransitive Verbs in the Perfective Aspect

295

Negation of Perfective Aspect

297

Uses of the Perfective Aspect

298

Use of the Present Perfective Tense

298

Use of the Past Perfective Tense

299

Use of the Future Perfective Tense

299

8.7 Grammar: कर Construction

301

कर Construction Video

301

कर with करना Conjunct Verb

301

कर in Perfective Aspect

301

8.8 Conjunct Verb

304

Conjunct Verb with करना Video

304

Conjunct Verb with होना

305

Adjective + होना

305

Noun + होना

305

8.9 Subjunctive

309

Subjunctive Mood

309

Structure

309

Negation of Subjunctive

310

Subjunctive Case in Imperfective and Perfective Aspects

310

Uses of Subjunctive Case

311

Complex Sentences: Uses of Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses

312

8.10 Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

315

CULTURAL NOTES

315

Acknowledgments

First of all, I would like to express my heart-felt gratitude to my students who are the source of my inspiration for this book. Their motivations to learn Hindi, and their need for comprehensive online learning materials, have encouraged me to start this journey.

Words fall short to express my deepest appreciation for Regina Gong, and her team members who work for Open Educational Resources (OER) at Michigan State University Libraries. Without Regina and her team this project would not be possible; they have helped me at every stage in this book.

I acknowledge the support that I received from the Department of Linguistics and Germanic, Slavic, Asian and African Studies at MSU. I am forever grateful to all my language teachers at MSU and elsewhere who directly and indirectly have shaped and enriched my teaching skill.

Last, but not least, I want to express my thanks to my family, who never stopped believing in me and have always been very supportive.

Image Credits

Cover Images

Cover design provided by MSU Libraries Publishing Services student intern Srividhya Pallay.

“[Punjabi Sardar.jpg](#)” by [fro3enfire](#) (Highway Huns) is licensed under [CC BY-SA 2.0](#)
([https://wordpress.org/openverse/image/
d17a6816-7576-46f2-b566-7b59bf4e543c?referrer=creativecommons.org](https://wordpress.org/openverse/image/d17a6816-7576-46f2-b566-7b59bf4e543c?referrer=creativecommons.org))

“[Gray scale photo of a bride during night time](#)” is licensed under [Pexels License](#)
(<https://www.pexels.com/photo/gray-scale-photo-of-a-bride-during-night-time-3699388/>)

“[Group of Children Taking Photo Together](#)” by [Harsha Vardhan](#) is licensed under [Pexels License](#)
(<https://www.pexels.com/photo/group-of-children-taking-photo-together-2940334/>)

“[Photo of People in Traditional Wear](#)” by [Nishant Aneja](#) is licensed under [Pexels License](#)
(<https://www.pexels.com/photo/photo-of-people-in-traditional-wear-2477361/>)

“[Brown Ganesh Figurine](#)” by [Artem Beliaikin](#) is licensed under [Pexels License](#)
(<https://www.pexels.com/photo/brown-ganesha-figurine-1485630/>)

“[Two Women Wearing Traditional Dress Carrying Basins](#)” by [Jose Aragonés](#) is licensed under [Pexels License](#)
(<https://www.pexels.com/photo/two-women-wearing-traditional-dress-carrying-basins-860577/>)

“[Boy Holding a Flag of India](#)” by [Lucky Trips](#) is licensed under [Pexels License](#)
(<https://www.pexels.com/photo/boy-holding-a-flag-of-india-2802368/>)

Introduction

Basic Hindi is funded by Open Educational Resources at Michigan State University. It is an online interactive theme-based textbook for the true beginner of the Hindi language. It promotes communicative, linguistic, and cultural competence. It has a mixture of pedagogical approaches to fit all types of learning and teaching philosophies/styles to achieve intermediate low to mid-ACTFL proficiency levels within a semester.

The book has eight chapters. Chapter 1 is an introduction to Hindi script and sound system. Chapters 2-8 are based on themes: beginning conversation; family; describing places; expressing likes, dislikes, needs, and possession; giving instructions and making requests, expressing present, past, and future actions; and talking about past and completed actions.

Each chapter starts with a review of the vocabulary, grammar, and theme of the previous chapter. Each two to three reading/listening is carefully tailored to fit the proficiency level of the intended learners. Each chapter also has a “study abroad” section. The reading/listening and study abroad sections have pre-/post- reading/listening activities to help learners to achieve interpersonal, interpretive, and presentational skills in communication. The goal of the study abroad section is to expose learners to study abroad experience. Each chapter also has a grammar section which includes three to four grammatical items explained in a video and text, followed by interactive activities. Each chapter ends with cultural notes and a few online available materials related to the theme of the chapter.

The book aims to cater to different learning and teaching styles so the learners can go through the reading/listening sections then the grammar section or the other way around to develop linguistic competence. Vocabulary in reading/listening is built in the conversation with the English meaning so that learners can infer the meaning in the given context. Activities in reading/listening and grammar have been developed by using h5p so that learners can get immediate constructive feedback.

Lastly, this book is the beginning of the journey and not the end of it. I promise to keep this book updated and revised based on the users, and experts’ feedback. So, if you find something, any error, and/or have suggestions, please do not hesitate to write to rranjan@msu.edu.

CHAPTER 1: HINDI LETTERS & SCRIPT

हिन्दी वर्णमाला चार्ट

CHART NO. 40

अ अनार 	आ आम 	इ इमली 	ई ईख 	उ उल्लू 	ऊ ऊन 	ऋ ऋषि 
ए एकतारा 	ऐ ऐनक 	ओ ओखली 	औ औरत 	अं अंगूर 	अः	
क कबूतर 	ख खरगोश 	ग गमला 	घ घड़ी 	ङ		
च चरखा 	छ छतरी 	ज जग 	झ झंडा 	ञ		
ट टमाटर 	ठ ठठेरा 	ड डमरू 	ढ ढकना 	ण		
त तरबूज 	थ थन 	द दबात 	ध धनुष 	न नल 		
प पतंग 	फ फल 	ब बकरी 	भ भालू 	म मछली 		
य यज्ञ 	र रस्सी 	ल लट्ठू 	व वन 	श शल्यम 		
ष षट्कोण 	स सेब 	ह हरिन 	क्ष क्षत्रिय 	त्र त्रिशूल 	ज्ञ ज्ञानी 	

आं आँ अँ ईँ उँ ऊँ ऋँ ॠँ एँ ऐँ ओँ औँ अं अः अँ

“Hindi Alphabet Chart” by counterclockwise is licensed under CC BY-NC-SA 2.0.

Goals of this Chapter

- You will learn Hindi vowel and consonant letters.
- You will learn dependent vowels
- You will learn how to conjugate the dependent vowels with consonants
- You will learn half consonants and consonant clusters
- You will learn nasal consonants.
- You will learn how to read and write Hindi words and phrases.

1.1 हिंदी स्वरण वर्ण "Hindi Vowel Letters"



"File:Little-genius-hindi-vowels-with-picture-match-original-im-adn37uwxkx5zu-Edit.jpg" by Gopikastk is licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0.

Please watch this video of vowel letters with examples. While you are watching you can pause the video and try to say each vowel letter and examples out loud.

Instructor Video: [Vowel letters with examples](#)

How to Write Vowel Letters

Please watch the following video to learn how to write vowel letters. Please pause the video and practice writing these vowel letters.

Instructor Video: [How to write vowel letters](#)

Table 1. Hindi Vowel Letters “हन्दिी स्वरुण वरुण”

Table 1: List of Hindi vowel letters with their English equivalent sounds.

Hindi	अ	आ	इ	ई	उ
English	a	aa	i	ii	u
Hindi	ऊ	ए	ऐ	ओ	औ
English	oo	e	ai	o	au
Hindi		अं	अः	ऋ	
English		un	uh	Ri	

Table 2. Examples of Vowel letters in English and Hindi words.

Table 2 (above). List of vowel letters with examples in English and Hindi words.

Vowel Letters	English Examples	Hindi Examples
अ	ABOUT, AGAIN	अनार
आ	ARM, CAR	आम
इ	PIN, KIN	इमली
ई	PEEL, FEEL	ईख
उ	PUT, BULL	उल्लू
ऊ	SCHOOL, POOL	ऊन
ए	PEN, DEN	एक
ऐ	PAN, VAN	ऐनक
ओ	POST, MOST	ओखली
औ	CAUGHT, BOUGHT	औरत
अं	UNDER, UNDO	अंडा
अः	RAMA, SHIVA	दुःख, अतंतः
ऋ	KRISHNA, KRISHI	ऋषि

Worksheet 1. Please practice writing vowel letters now

Worksheet 1. Hindi language learners can download the worksheet below to practice writing vowel letters.

[Worksheet 1 PDF](#)

Test yourself

Activity 1:



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=672#h5p-2>

Activity 2:



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=672#h5p-1>

Please record your vowel sounds here and share it with your friends/teacher for further feedback.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=672#h5p-38>

धन्यवाद !

1.2 हिंदी व्यंजन वर्ण "Hindi Consonant Letters"



"Alphabet series 2005" by Artiii is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0.

Please watch the following video of Hindi consonant letters. While watching the video, you can pause and try to say each letter out loud.

Instructor Video: [Hindi Consonant letters](#)

Writing Consonant Letters

Please watch the following video and try to learn how to write consonant letters.

Instructor Video: [Writing Consonants](#)

Table 4. List of Consonant Letter with their English equivalent sounds.

Table 4 (above). Hindi consonant letters with their English equivalent and their place and manner of articulations.

	Place of Articulation	Unvoiced Unaspirated	Unvoiced Aspirated	Voiced Unaspirated	Voiced Aspirated	Nasal
Hindi	Velar	क	ख	ग	घ	ङ
English		ka	kha	ga	gha	nga
Hindi	Palatal	च	छ	ज	झ	ञ
English		cha	chha	ja	jha	nja
Hindi	Retroflex	ट	ठ	ड/ड़	ढ/ढ़	ण
English		Ta	Tha	Da/Ra	Dha/Rha	Na
Hindi	Dental	त	थ	द	ध	न
English		ta	tha	da	dha	na
Hindi	Labial	प	फ	ब	भ	म
English		pa	pha	ba	bha	ma

Hindi	Semi-vowels	य	र	ल	व	
English		ya	ra	la	va/wa	
Hindi	Sibilants	स	श	ष		
English		sa	sha	shha		
Hindi	Glotal	ह				
English		ha				
Hindi	Clusters	क्ष	त्र	ज्ञ		
English		ksha	tra	jna		

Table 5. Examples of Hindi Consonants in English and Hindi words

Table 5 (above). Examples of consonant letters in Hindi and English words.

Consonants	English	Hindi	Notes
क	SKILL, STICK	कलम, कपड़ा	
ख		खरगोश, खरा	“ख” is pronounced as “क,” but with aspiration (extra puff of air).
ग	GUN, GOAL	गमला, गड़बड़	
घ		घर, घड़ी	“घ” is pronounced as “ग,” but with aspiration (extra puff of air).
ङ		गंगा, कधी	Velar nasal does not explicitly appear in a word. It comes as a dot (ं) above the letter to show nasalization.
च	PITCH, SWITCH	चरखा, चरतिर	

छ		छत, छड़ी	“छ” is pronounced as “च,” but with aspiration (extra puff of air).
ज	JUG, JOKE	जग, जटलि	
झ		झरना, झगड़ा	“झ” is pronounced as “ज,” but with aspiration (extra puff of air).
ञ		पंजाब, पंच	Palatal nasal does not explicitly appear in a word. It comes as a dot (ं) above the letter to show nasalization.
ट	BAT, CAT	टमाटर, टमटम	
ठ		ठठेरा, ठग	“ठ” is pronounced as “ट,” but with aspiration (extra puff of air).
ड	BAD, CARD	डमरू, डक्का	

ढ		ढक्कन, ढहना	“ढ” is pronounced as “ड,” but with aspiration (extra puff of air).
ण		ठंडा, अंडा	Retroflex nasal does not explicitly appear in a word. It comes as a dot (◌ं) above the letter to show nasalization.
त		तरबूज, तनाव	“त” is pronounced as “ट,” with the tongue at dental position.
थ		थरमस, थकना	“थ” is pronounced as “त,” but with aspiration (extra puff of air).
द	THE, THEN	दवा, दरवाजा	
ध		धन, धनुष	“ध” is pronounced as “द,” but with aspiration (extra puff of air).
न	NO, NEAR	नल, नहाना	

प	NAP, SLEEP	पतंग, पलग	
फ		फल, फटना	“फ” is pronounced as “प,” but with aspiration (extra puff of air).
ब	TUB, PUB	बकरी, बदन	
भ		भलाई, भरोसा	“भ” is pronounced as “ब,” but with aspiration (extra puff of air).
म	MOM, MONEY	मछली, ममता	
य	YELLOW, YES	यज्ञ, यश	
र	REST, RIVER	रस्सी, रचना	

ल	LAMP, LARGE	लट्ठू, लड्का	
व	WAY, WINE	वर्दी, वकील	Hindi has only “व” for English “W,” and “V.”
स	SUN, SERVICE	सब्जी, सड़क	
श	SHOE, SHINE	शलगम, शत	
ष		षट्भुज, षड्यंत्र	“ष” is pronounced as “श,” with the tongue at retroflex position.
ह	HINDI, HUB	हरा, हरनि	
क्ष		क्षत्रिय, वृक्ष	“क्ष” is a borrowed letter from Sanskrit. It does not have English equivalent.

तृ		पत्र, पात्र	“तृ” is a borrowed letter from Sanskrit. It does not have English equivalent.
जू		यजू,	“जू” is a borrowed letter from Sanskrit. It does not have English equivalent.

Worksheet 2. Please practice writing these consonant letters

Worksheet 2. Hindi language learners can download the worksheet below to practice writing consonant letters.

[Worksheet 2 PDF](#)

Test Yourself

Activity 1: Match the followings



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=674#h5p-3>

Activity 2: Choose the correct option.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=674#h5p-4>

Activity 3:

Please record your consonant sounds here and share it with your friends/teacher for further feedback.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=674#h5p-38>

Reading and Writing Task

You should try to read the words in Worksheet 3 (below). You can write them down in Roman script then watch the following video and check your answer.

Worksheet 3 (above). Reading and Writing: Please read these words and try to write them in Roman script and then check your answer using video 5 (below).

जल	नल	सच	झट	रथ
फल	हल	मत	पर	घर
डर	बस	कह	चख	कर
मत	हर	अब	पढ़	यम
कलम	कमल	खरब	कलश	महल
बतख	मदन	पलक	नहर	भजन
शहद	शहर	सड़क	मगर	चरण
पकड़	इधर	ऊपर	गरम	परत
कसरत	अजगर	दशरथ	शरबत	टमटम
बरगद	नटखट	उबटन	परवल	पनघट

चमचम	लगभग	करवट	जगमग	हलचल

Instructor Video: [Feedback on Worksheet 3](#)

Half Consonants

Unlike English, Hindi has half consonants (consonant without vowel). In Hindi, half consonants are used to form consonant clusters in words.

Please watch the following video to learn how to write half consonant.

Instructor Video: [Half Consonants](#)

Place of articulation	Unvoiced unaspirated	Unvoiced Aspirated	Voiced unaspirated	Voiced Aspirated	Nasal
Velar	क्/क	ख/ख	ग/ग	घ/घ	ङ
Palatal	च्/च	छ/छ	ज/ज	झ/झ	ञ/ञ
Retroflex	ट्	ठ्	ड्	ढ्	ण/ण
Dental	त्/त	थ/थ	द	ध/ध	न/न
Labial	प्/प	फ/फ	ब/ब	भ/भ	म/म
Semi-vowel	य/य	र/र	ल/ल	व/व	स्/स्
Sibilants	स्/स्	श्/श्	ष्/ष्		
Glabial	ह/ह				

Picture 1. Handwritten half consonant in both styles.

क / क्	ख / ख्	ग / ग्	घ / घ्	ङ्
च / च्	छ / छ्	ज / ज्	झ / झ्	ञ /
ट्	ठ्	ड्	ढ्	ण / ण्
त / त्	थ / थ्	द /	ध / ध्	न / न्
प / प्	फ / फ्	ब / ब्	भ / भ्	म / म्
य / य्	र / र्	ल / ल्	व / व्	स / स्
	श / श्	ष / ष्	ह / ह्	

Picture 2. Typed half consonants in Hindi

Half “र” (R)

Half “र” when it comes in a consonant cluster, it is written in two ways.

- (a) When half “र” comes after another consonant, it is marked as a diagonal stroke at the bottom of the letter going from right top to the left bottom.

For example:

प्	प्रेमे	Prem
क्	क्रम	kram
ग्र	ग्राहक	graahak

- (b) When “र” come before another consonant, it is marked on the top of another consonant as a “रेफ” reph.

For example:

र्प	सर्प	sarp
र्य	आर्य	aary
र्षा	वर्षा (if there is a long vowel, reph goes on the top of the long vowel)	warshhaa

धन्यवाद !

1.3 Dependent Vowels, and Vowel-Consonant Conjugation



Dependent Vowels

Vowels in Hindi can be written independently (we learned this in the last part) and dependently. When we write a word we need to conjugate consonant with vowel letter. In order to write that consonant and vowel clusters, we need to use dependent vowel marking attached with consonant. Here is a list of dependent vowel markers.

Table 6 (above). List of independent and dependent vowels in Hindi.

Independent	अ	आ	इ	ई	उ
Dependent	ॐ	॒	॑	॒	॑
Independent	ऊ	ए	ऐ	ओ	औ
Dependent	॑	॒	॑	॒	॒
Independent		अः	अः	ऋ	
Dependent		॑	॑	॑	

Dependent Vowel Letters with Consonant Letters

Please watch the following video to learn how dependent vowels conjugate with consonant letters. Table 7 also shows examples of how half consonants are conjugating with dependent vowels.

Instructor Video: [Dependent vowel and consonant conjugation](#)

Table 7 (above). Examples of conjugations of vowel and consonant letters.

		Half consonants							
		क्	ग्	त्	द्	प्	व्	स्	ह्
Independent Vowels	Dependent Vowels	Conjugated consonant letters							
अ	Ø	क	ग	त	द	प	व	स	ह
आ	ा	का	गा	ता	दा	पा	वा	सा	हा
इ	ि	कि	गि	ति	दि	पि	वि	सि	हि
ई	ी	की	गी	ती	दी	पी	वी	सी	ही
उ	ु	कु	गु	तु	दु	पु	वु	सु	हु
ऊ	ू	कू	गू	तू	दू	पू	वू	सू	हू
ए	े	के	गे	ते	दे	पे	वे	से	हे
ऐ	ै	कै	गै	तै	दै	पै	वै	सै	है
ओ	ो	को	गो	तो	दो	पो	वो	सो	हो
औ	ौ	कौ	गौ	तौ	दौ	पौ	वौ	सौ	हौ
अं	ं	कं	गं	तं	दं	पं	वं	सं	हं
अः	ः	कः	गः	तः	दः	पः	वः	सः	x
ऋ	ॄ	कॄ	गॄ	तॄ	दॄ	पॄ	वॄ	सॄ	हॄ

Test Yourself



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=681#h5p-5>

Reading and Writing Task

Please try to read the words in Worksheet 4 (below). You can write them down in Roman script then watch the video and check your answer.

Worksheet 4 (above). Reading and Writing: Please read these words and try to write them in Roman script and then check your answer using video 8 (below).

काका	काला	काकी	कोख	घी
गमला	कुछ	चाचा	झकाझक	चखो
कई	आग	कोई	कौआ	अचूक
जाओ	आओ	टोपी	डाकू	ढीली
बगीचा	माता	थोड़ा	लड़का	लड़की
कठिनाई	कतिब	देवनागरी	बारिश	शाबाश
सलाई	ऋण	कृपा	भाषण	पृथ्वी
प्रकाश	कार्य	प्रगति	ग्राहक	वर्तमान
कुरसी	चक्र	नम्रता	पर्व	मर्द

Instructor Video: [Feedback on Worksheet 4](#)

Consonants Cluster/Conjunct Consonants

Similar Consonants Cluster

In Hindi, similar consonants can come together in a word. They are pronounced as a lengthened consonants.

For example:

पक्का	बच्चा	कुत्ता
pakkaa	bachchaa	kuttaa

Different Consonants Cluster

In Hindi, different consonants can come together in a word. For pronunciation, one should start with the place of articulation of the first consonant, but move the tongue position to the second consonant before releasing the air.

For example:

सत्य	प्यार	त्वचा
saty	pyaar	twachaa

Dependent Vowel-Consonants Cluster Conjugation

When the dependent vowels come together with the consonant clusters, the dependent vowels are marked at the second consonant in a consonant cluster.

Exception the short “i” [इ/ई] marker, the short “i” marker comes before the half/first consonant in a consonant cluster.

For example:

आ	इ	ई	उ	ऊ	ए	ऐ	ओ	औ
।	ि	ी	ु	ू	े	ै	ो	ौ
क्या	शक्ति	पत्नी	च्युत	न्यूनतम	क्लेश	द्वैत	त्योहार	प्रौढ़
kyaa	shakti	patnii	chyut	nyoonatam	klesh	dvait	tyohaar	prauRh

Test Yourself

Reading and Writing Task

Please try to read the words in Worksheet 5 (below). You can write them down in Roman script then watch the video and check your answer.

Worksheet 5 (above). Reading and Writing: Please read these words and try to write them in Roman script and then check your answer using video 9 (below).

मुख्य	सत्य	मखन	क्लास	ग्लास
बच्चा	ग्रहण	मट्ठा	ज्ञान	ज्यादा
मध्य	वदिया	त्वचा	वत्स	न्याय
स्वाद	शक्ति	प्यार	स्तम्भ	कक्षा
स्तब्ध	वात्सल्य	भक्ति	वृद्ध	पष्ट

Instructor Video: [Feedback on Worksheet 5](#)

धन्यवाद !

1.4 Nasal Sounds in Hindi



Nasal Sounds Video

Instructor Video: [Nasal Sounds](#)

Bindu/Anusvaar (ँ)

In Hindi script, nasalization is marked by a superscript “bindu/anusvaar” (ँ). “Bindu/anusvaar” represents the nasal sounds for all the consonant categories (velar, palatal, retroflex, dental, and labial). To identify the correct category of the nasal sound marked by a “bindu/anusvaar,” one has to look at the next letter. The “bindu/anusvaar” belongs to the category of the next consonant letter.

Table 8 (below). List of nasal sounds with examples in Hindi words.

Table 8 (above). List of nasal sounds with examples in Hindi words.

Bindu/Anusvaar (ँ) represents	Examples		
Velar Nasal ङ	अंक	गंगा	कंगन
Palatal Nasal ञ	पञ्चा	अञ्चल	पञ्चायत
Retroflex Nasal ण	अड्डा	कण्ठ	पड्डति
Dental Nasal न	अन्त	हृदि	अन्धा
Labial Nasal म	कवल्	चप्पा	लव्वा
Bindu/Anusvaar (ँ) before य and ञ represents preceding vowel nasalization.	सयंम	सवांद	सवंरण
Bindu/Anusvaar (ँ) before र, ल, and स represents dental nasal	संसार	संरक्षण	
Bindu/Anusvaar (ँ) before श represents palatal nasal	अंश	दंश	मंशा
Bindu/Anusvaar (ँ) before ह represents velar nasal	संहि		

Chandrabinḍu (ँ)

Chandrabinḍu (ँ) is used to indicate the vowel nasalization.

For example: अँघा, हँ बाँध |

Sometimes, when a vowel markings in a word does not allow the space because of the superscript then instead of chandrabinḍu (ँ), bindu (ं) is used.

For example: मैँ, सच्चिईँ, मेँ

In typing, it is very common to see the use of bindu (ं) instead of chandrabinḍu (ँ) in modern Hindi script.

Test yourself

Reading/Writing Task

Worksheet 6 (below). Reading and Writing: Please read these words and try to write them in Roman script and then check your answer using video (below).

Worksheet 6 (above). Reading and Writing: Please read these words and try to write them in Roman script and then check your answer using video (below).

कधी	कंगाल	कचन	बधन	जंगल
टकण	चदन	छदं	बूँद	आँख
चदा	आँसू	अँग्रेजी	कधा	धधा

Instructor Video: [Feedback on Worksheet 6](#)

धन्यवाद !

1.5 Persian-Arabic Borrowed Letters



Table 9. List of Persian and Arabic borrowed letters in Hindi

Table 9. List of Persian and Arabic borrowed letters in Hindi.

Letter	Roman	Examples
क़	qa	क़ब्र, क़ानून
ख़	Kha	ख़त, ख़ुदा
ग़	Ga	ग़ैर, ग़ालबि
ज़	za	बाज़ार, वज़ीर
फ़	fa	फ़र्क, फ़र्श

Test Yourself

Reading and Writing Task

Worksheet 7. Please read the following words and try to write them in Roman script and then check your answer using the video (below).

Worksheet 7 (above). Reading and Writing: Please read these words and try to write them in Roman script and then check your answer using video II (below).

प्याज़	लफ़ाफ़ा	चीज़	मज़े	खास
ख़ूबसूरत	ख़तरनाक	ज़मीन	जज़ीर	हफ़्ता
कागज़	ज़िद्दि	बाग़	शौक़	ख़ुश
अंग्रेज़ी	काफ़ी	माफ़	साफ़	काबलि

Instructor Video: [Feedback on Worksheet 7](#)

Overall Learning

The following words need your overall learning of the Hindi script in this chapter. Please read these words and try to write them in Roman script and then check your answer using the video below.

Worksheet 8 (above). Reading and Writing: Please read these words and try to write them in Roman script and then check your answer using the video below.

कृष्णा	ऊँचा	गँगा	हन्दी	उर्दू
चट्टी	जमीनदार	ऋतु	वशिषण	पृथ्वी
मत्तिर	राष्ट्र	क्रयान्वयन	खर्चा	आर्थिक
ऋतकि	द्वितीय	युद्ध	उत्तीर्ण	लक्षण
जॉर्ज वाशिंगटन	न्यूयॉर्क	नसीरुद्दीन शाह	फरवरी	कक्षा

Instructor Video: [Feedback on Worksheet 8](#)

धन्यवाद !

1.6 Common Hindi Words and Phrases



Table of Common Hindi Words & Phrases

Hindi	Transliteration	English
नमस्ते	<i>namaste</i>	Hello/Bye
हाँ	<i>haan</i>	Yes
नहीं	<i>nahin</i>	No
अच्छा	<i>achchhaa</i>	Good
खराब	<i>Kharaab</i>	Bad
ठीक	<i>Thiik</i>	Alright
क्या	<i>kyaa</i>	What
कब	<i>kab</i>	When
कहाँ	<i>kahaan</i>	Where
धन्यवाद	<i>dhnyawaad</i>	Thanks
कृपया	<i>kRipyaa</i>	Please
हंदी में बोलिये	<i>Hindi me boliye</i>	Please speak in Hindi.
यह क्या है?	<i>ye kyaa hai</i>	What is this?
यह कौन है?	<i>ye kaun hai</i>	Who is s/he?

x कहाँ है?	<i>X kahaan hai?</i>	Where is X
फिर से बोलिये	<i>phir se boliye</i>	Please say again
क्या हाल है?	<i>kyaa haal hai</i>	How are you?
मुझे x चाहिये	<i>mujhe X chaahiye</i>	I need X
क्या चल रहा है?	<i>kyaa chal rahaa hai</i>	What is going on?
x कितने का है?	<i>X kitne kaa hai</i>	How much does X cost?
जरा/थोड़ा धीरे बोलिये	<i>Zaraa/ThoRaa dhiire boliye</i>	Please speak slowly.
अन्दर आइये	<i>andar aaiye</i>	Please come in
बाहर जाइए	<i>bahar jaaiye</i>	Please go out.
क्या आप समझ रहे/रही है?	<i>kyaa aap samajh rahe/rahii hain?</i>	Do you understand?
मुझे समझ नहीं आ रहा।	<i>mujhe samajh nahin aa rahaa.</i>	I do not understand.
हिन्दी में x को क्या कहते हैं?	<i>Hindi me "X" ko kyaa kahate hain?</i>	How do you say "X" in Hindi?
माफ़ कीजिये	<i>maaf kiijiye</i>	Sorry/Excuse me
जरा सुनिये	<i>zaraa suniye</i>	Please listen

Test Yourself



An interactive H₅P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=i244#h5p-6>

धन्यवाद !

1.7 Extra/Optional online Materials



Practice Vowel Letters



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1247#oembed-1>

Practice Consonant Letters



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1247#oembed-2>

Hindi Letters Games

<https://www.digitaldialects.com/Hindi/alphabet.htm>

धन्यवाद !
Thank you!

CHAPTER 2: BEGINNING CONVERSATIONS



“India: Girls Sit and Learn with Teachers” by Global Partnership for Education — GPE is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0.

Goals of this Chapter

- You will learn basic greetings in Hindi.
- You will learn how to exchange introduction.
- You will learn vocabulary related to house hold items, numbers (1-10), names of fruits and vegetables.
- You will also learn some useful vocabulary related to introduction.
- In grammar items, you will learn gender of nouns, how to change nouns from singular to plural form.
- You will learn verb “to be” with pronouns.

- You will learn to form simple positive, negative, yes/no question, and yes/no + negative question sentences.

2.1 Review Concepts from Chapter 1



Review of Chapter 1



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=753#h5p-39>

Review Worksheet: Please write these words in Hindi

arth	bhaaShaa	hindii	RiShi	hindustaan
bhaarat	namaste	praNaam	umr	Khushii
bolanaa	likhanaa	sunanaa	vidyaarthii	shakti

Answer to review worksheet with English meaning of these words.

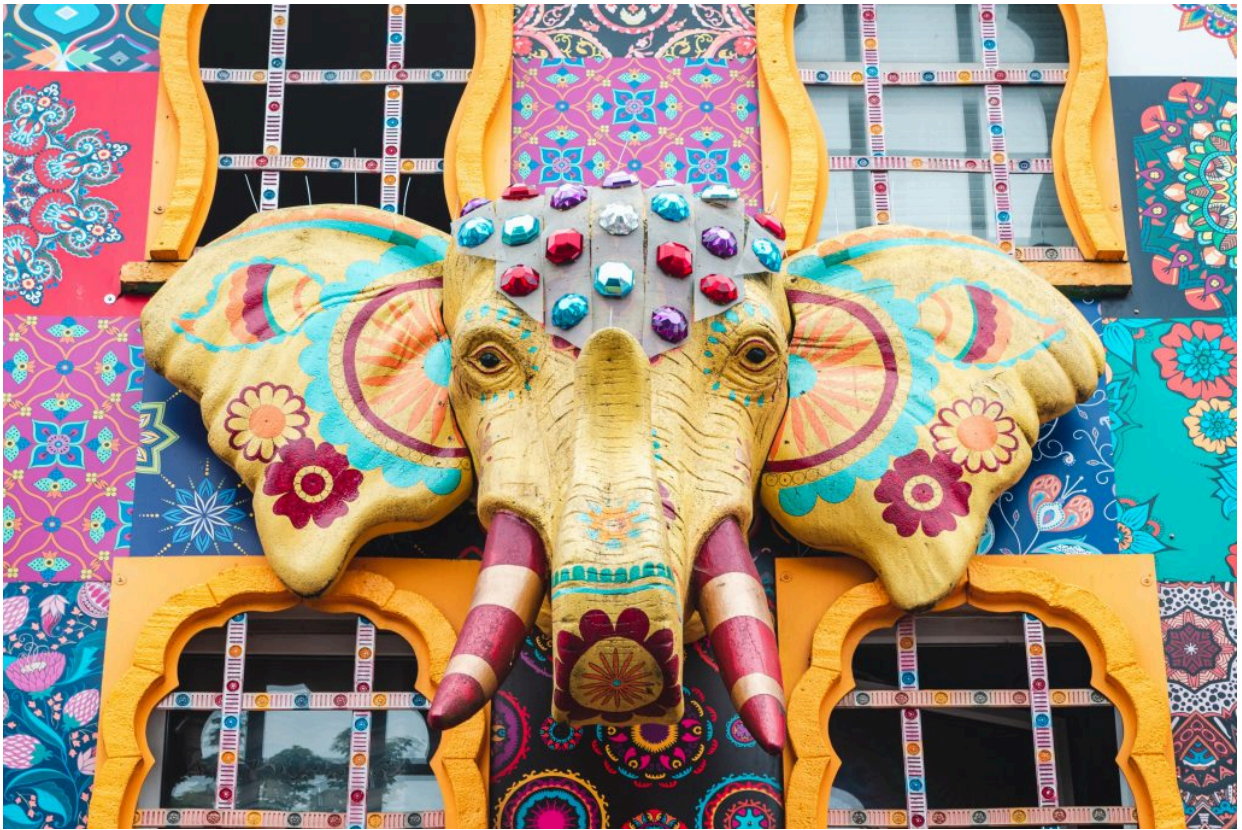
अर्थ	भाषा	हिन्दी	ऋषि	हिन्दुस्तान
Meaning	Language	Hindi	Sage	Hindustan
भारत	नमस्ते	प्रणाम	उम्र	खुशी
India	Hello, Bye	Hello, Bye	Age	Happiness
बोलना	लिखना	सुनना	वदियार्थी	शक्ति
To speak	To write	To listen	Student	Power

धन्यवाद!

2.2 Greetings & Introductions



Greetings



An Indian street colorful art with elephant head

Vocabulary 1. List of words for formal and informal greetings

<u>Hindi</u>	<u>Transliteration</u>	<u>English meaning</u>
नमस्ते <i>n.m.</i>	<i>namaste</i>	Hello
क्या <i>pron. & adj.</i>	<i>kyaa</i>	What
हाल <i>n.m.</i>	<i>haal</i>	Condition/Situation
क्या हाल है?	<i>kyaa haal hai?</i>	How are you (informal)
सब <i>adj.</i>	<i>sab</i>	All
ठीक <i>adj.</i>	<i>Thiik</i>	Okay
सब ठीक है	<i>sab Thiik hai.</i>	All is well
और <i>conj.</i>	<i>aur</i>	And
तुम <i>pron.</i>	<i>tum</i>	You (Informal)
मैं <i>pron.</i>	<i>main</i>	I
भी <i>adv. & conj.</i>	<i>bhii</i>	too
चलना <i>v.it.</i>	<i>chalanaa</i>	to walk/to go
फिर <i>adj.</i>	<i>phir</i>	again
मिलना <i>v.it</i>	<i>milanaa</i>	to meet/to see

Instructor Video: [Basic Greetings](#)

Introductions

Vocabulary 2. Introduction

<u>Hindi</u>	<u>Transliteration</u>	<u>English</u>
परिचय <i>n.m.</i>	<i>parichay</i>	Introduction
आपका <i>adj.</i>	<i>aapkaa</i>	Your (Honorific/Formal)
नाम <i>n.m.</i>	<i>naam</i>	Name
मेरा <i>pron.</i>	<i>meraa</i>	My
कहाँ <i>adv.</i>	<i>kahaan</i>	Where
से <i>pp.</i>	<i>se</i>	From
आप <i>pron.</i>	<i>aap</i>	You (Honorific/Formal)
कतिना <i>adj.</i>	<i>kitnaa</i>	How much/many
साल <i>n.m.</i>	<i>saal</i>	year
की <i>pp.</i>	<i>kii</i>	's (of). Example: मैं बीस साल का हूँ "I am of 20 years old."
उम्र <i>n.f.</i>	<i>umr</i>	Age
यह <i>pron.</i>	<i>ye</i>	S/he, This
लड़का <i>n.m.</i>	<i>laRakaa</i>	Boy
कौन <i>pron. & adj.</i>	<i>kaun</i>	Who
अच्छा <i>adj.</i>	<i>achchhaa</i>	Good/Well
धन्यवाद <i>n.m.</i>	<i>dhanyawaad</i>	Thanks
मिलना <i>v.it</i>	<i>milnaa</i>	To meet
खुशी <i>n.f.</i>	<i>khushii</i>	Happiness
मुझे <i>pron.</i>	<i>mujhe</i>	To me (Dative case form of I)
अंग्रेजी <i>n.f.</i>	<i>angrezii</i>	English
राजनीति शास्त्र <i>n.m.</i>	<i>raajniiti shaastr</i>	Political Science
अर्थ शास्त्र <i>n.m.</i>	<i>arth shaastr</i>	Economics

Reading: परिचय "Introduction"

Context: Vidya walked in her Hindi class first day, and meet Shilpaa and Peter.

Name	Hindi	Transliteration	English
वदिया:	नमस्ते!	namaste!	Hello!
शिल्पा:	नमस्ते!	namaste!	Hello!
वदिया:	आपका नाम क्या है?	aapkaa naam kyaa hai?	What is your name?
शिल्पा:	मेरा नाम शिल्पा है और आपका?	meraa naam shilpaa hai. aur aapkaa?	My name is Shilpa. And yours?
वदिया:	मेरा नाम वदिया है	meraa naam Vidya hai.	My name is Vidya.
शिल्पा:	आप कहाँ से है?	aap kahaan se hain?	Where are you from?
वदिया:	मैं मिशिगन से हूँ आप कहाँ से है?	main Michigan se hoon. aap kahaan se hain?	I am from Michigan. Where are you from?
शिल्पा:	मैं चिकागो से हूँ	main Chicago se hoon.	I am from Chicago.
वदिया:	आप कतिन साल की है?	aap kitane saal kii hain?	How old are you?
शिल्पा:	मैं बीस साल की हूँ आपकी उम्र कतिनी है?	main biis saal kii hoon. aapkii umr kitanii hai?	I am 20. What is your age?
वदिया:	मैं इक्कीस (साल) की हूँ	main ikkiis (saal) kii hoon.	I am 21.
शिल्पा:	आपका मेजर क्या है?	aapkaa major kyaa hai?	What is your major?
वदिया:	मेरा मेजर अंग्रेजी है और आपका ?	meraa major angrezii hai. aur aapkaa?	My major is English. And yours?
शिल्पा:	मेरा मेजर राजनीति शास्त्र है	meraa major raajaniiti shaastra hai.	My major is Political science.
वदिया:	यह लड़का कौन है?	ye laRakaa kaun hai?	Who is this boy?
शिल्पा:	यह पीटर है	ye Peter hai.	He is Peter.
वदिया:	नमस्ते पीटर !	namaste Peter!	Hello Peter!
पीटर:	नमस्ते ! आपका नाम क्या है?	namaste! aapkaa naam kyaa hai?	Hello! What is your name?
वदिया:	मैं वदिया हूँ आप कैसे है?	main vidyaa hoon. aap kaise hain?	I am Vidya. How are you?
पीटर:	मैं अच्छा हूँ और आप?	main achchhaa hoon. aur aap?	I am well. and you?
वदिया:	मैं भी अच्छी हूँ धन्यवाद ! आपकी उम्र कतिनी है?	main bhii achchhii hoon, Thanks! aapkii umr kitanii hai.	I am well too. Thanks! What is your age?
पीटर:	मैं उन्नीस साल का हूँ आपका मेजर क्या है?	main unniis saal kaa hoon. aapakaa major kyaa hai?	I am 19 years old. What is your major?
वदिया:	मेरा मेजर अंग्रेजी है, और आपका?	meraa major angrezii hai, aur aapakaa?	My major is English. And yours?
पीटर:	मेरा भी	meraa bhii.	Mine too.
वदिया:	आप से मिलकर खुशी हुई	aap se milakar khushii huii.	Nice to meet you.
पीटर:	मैं भी, नमस्ते!	mujhe bhii, namaste!	Me too, Bye!
वदिया:	नमस्ते!	namaste!	Bye!

Please watch the following video and listen to the above conversation and check your reading and pronunciation.

Instructor Video: [परचिय](#)

Test Yourself



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=757#h5p-9>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=757#h5p-10>

Question & Answer



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=757#h5p-11>

धन्यवाद!

2.3 Informal Conversations



Reading: Informal Conversation Between Friends

Context: Hrithik and Vidya are friends and study together in a school. They saw each other in school before going to their class.

Name	Hindi	Transliteration	English
ऋतिक:	नमस्ते!	namaste!	Hello!
वदिया:	नमस्ते!	namaste!	Hello!
ऋतिक:	क्या हाल है?	kyaa haal hai?	How are you?
वदिया:	सब ठीक हैं और तुम?	sab Thiik hai. aur tum?	All is well. and you?
ऋतिक:	मैं भी ठीक हूँ	main bhii Thiik hoon.	I am well too.
वदिया:	क्लास चलो?	class chalen?	Should we go to class?
ऋतिक:	चलो	chalo.	Let's go.
क्लास के बाद "After the class."			
वदिया:	फिर मिलेंगे, नमस्ते!	phir milenge, namaste!	See you again, Bye!
ऋतिक:	ठीक है, नमस्ते!	Thiik hai, namaste!	Okay, Bye!

Listening: Please watch the following video and listen to the above conversation and check your reading and pronunciation.

Instructor Video: [Informal Conversation](#)

Activity

Please find a friend who speaks Hindi and/or a native speaker and practice this conversation with her/him. Please also record your conversation. After recording you can download your recording to share with your friends/teachers for feedback. This is also good for self-reflection.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=759#h5p-38>

Informal Conversation: Asking for Phone Number & eMail

Vocabulary 3. Learn Hindi Number 0-10

<u>Hindi</u>	<u>English</u>	<u>Hindi</u>	<u>Transliteration</u>
०	0	शून्य	shunya
१	1	एक	ek
२	2	दो	do
३	3	तीन	tiin
४	4	चार	chaar
५	5	पांच	paanch
६	6	छः/छह	chhah/chhai
७	7	सात	saat
८	8	आठ	aaTh
९	9	नौ	nau
१०	10	दस	das

Reading: Informal Conversation — Asking for phone number and email address

Context: Hindi teacher assigned a group work and puts Shilpa and Peter in one group. Now Shilpa and Peter need to exchange their e.mail address and phone number.

Name	Hindi	Transliteration	English
शिल्पा:	हेलो पीटर! क्या चल रहा है?	Hello Peter! kyaa chal rahaa hai?	Hello Peter! What is going on?
पीटर:	नमस्ते शिल्पा, सब ठीक हैं क्या हाल है?	namaste Shilpaa, sab Thiik hai kyaa haal hai?	Hello Shilpa, All is well. How are you?
शिल्पा:	सब ठीक हैं अच्छा, आपका ई.मेल एड्रेस क्या है?	sab Thiik hai achchhaa, aapkaa e.mail address kyaa hai?	All is well. Okay, what is your e.mail address?
पीटर:	मेरा ई.मेल एड्रेस peter@gmail.com है और आपका?	meraa e.mail address peter@gmail.com hai. aur aapkaa?	My e.mail address is peter@gmail.com. And yours?
शिल्पा:	मेरा ई.मेल एड्रेस shilpaa@gmail.com है	meraa e.mail address shilpaa@gmail.com hai.	My e.mail address is shilpaa@gmail.com.
पीटर:	आपका फोन नंबर क्या है?	aapkaa phone number kyaa hai?	What is your phone number?
शिल्पा:	मेरा फोन नंबर 555-xxx-xxxx है और आपका?	meraa phone number 555-xxx-xxxx hai. aur aapkaa?	My phone number is 555-xxx-xxx. And yours?
पीटर:	मेरा फोन नंबर 555-xxx-xxxx है	meraa phone number 555-xxx-xxx hai.	My phone number is 555-xxx-xxx.
शिल्पा:	धन्यवाद ! फिर मिलेंगे, नमस्ते।	dhanyawaad! phir milenge, namaste.	Thanks! See you again, Bye.
पीटर:	अच्छा, बाय!	achchhaa, bye!	Okay, Bye!

Listening: Please watch the following video and listen to the above conversation and check your reading and pronunciation.

Instructor Video: [Asking for contact information](#)

Test Yourself



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=759#h5p-14>

Activities

In your classroom and/or outside the classroom, identify 2-3 Hindi learners/speakers. Introduce yourself, and ask questions in Hindi such as name, major, age, where is s/he from, phone number, and e.mail address. In addition to these 6 questions, please try to create 2-4 more questions based on your own creativity.

		दोस्त 1	दोस्त 2	दोस्त 3
1	आपका नाम क्या है?			
2	आप कहाँ से हैं?			
3	आप कहाँ रहते/रहती हैं?			
4	आपकी उम्र क्या है?			
5	आपका मजेर क्या है?			
6	आपका फ़ोन नंबर क्या है?			
7	आपका ई.मेल एड्रेस क्या है?			

धन्यवाद !

2.4 Formal Conversations



Reading: Formal Conversation with a Hindi Teacher

Context: After the class, Vidya sees her Hindi teacher.

<u>Name</u>	<u>Hindi</u>	<u>Transliteration</u>	<u>English</u>
वदिया:	नमस्ते, अध्यापक जी	<i>namaste, adhyaapak ji</i>	Hello Sir
अक्षय:	नमस्ते, वदिया जी आप कैसे हैं?	<i>namaste, Vidya ji. aap kaisii hain?</i>	Hello Vidya ji. How are you?
वदिया:	मैं अच्छी हूँ धन्यवाद आप कैसे हैं?	<i>main achchhii hoon. Dhanyawaad. aap kaise hain?</i>	I am good. Thank you. How are you?
अक्षय:	मैं भी ठीक हूँ फिर मिलेंगे, नमस्ते	<i>main bhii Thiik hoon. phir milenge, namaste.</i>	I am good too. See you again, bye.
वदिया:	फिर मिलेंगे, नमस्ते	<i>phir milenge, namaste.</i>	See you again, bye.

Video 3. Listening: Formal Conversation with a Hindi Teacher

Listening: Please watch the following video and listen to the above conversation and check your reading and pronunciation.

Instructor Video: [Conversation with a Hindi teacher](#)

Test Yourself



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=761#h5p-7>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=761#h5p-8>

Activities

Please go around in the classroom and/or outside the classroom and say “Hello” to your friends and ask them “how are you?” and bid them “see you again, bye!” You can record your conversation here and share with your other friends and/or teacher.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=761#h5p-38>

धन्यवाद !

2.5 Study Abroad



Formal Conversation: Study Abroad

Jen is a Hindi student at one of the universities in America and planning to go to India for three months to learn Hindi. In India, she is going to stay with a host family. She is planning to send her host family a video introducing herself. Before she makes the video, she wrote her script.

Vocabulary 4 and Reading

<u>Hindi</u>	<u>Transliteration</u>	<u>English</u>
प्रिय <i>adj.</i>	<i>priye</i>	Dear
मजबान <i>adj.</i>	<i>mezabaan</i>	Host
परिवार <i>n.m.</i>	<i>pariwaar</i>	Family
बाईस <i>adj.</i>	<i>baaiis</i>	twenty two
साल <i>n.m.</i>	<i>saal</i>	year
वश्वविद्यालय <i>n.m.</i>	<i>vishwa-vidyaalay</i>	University
छात्रा <i>n.f.</i>	<i>chhaatraa</i>	Student (female)
मेरा <i>adj.</i>	<i>meraa</i>	My
मेजर <i>n.m.</i>	<i>major</i>	Major
संगीत <i>n.m.</i>	<i>sangiit</i>	Music
राज्य <i>n.m.</i>	<i>raajy</i>	State
मगर <i>conj.</i>	<i>magar</i>	But
रहना <i>v.it.</i>	<i>rahanaa</i>	To live
लोग <i>n.m.</i>	<i>log</i>	People
मिलना <i>v.it.</i>	<i>milanaa</i>	To meet
x के लिए <i>pp.</i>	<i>X ke liye</i>	For X
बहुत <i>adj. & adv.</i>	<i>bahut</i>	Very
उत्साहित <i>adj.</i>	<i>utsaahit</i>	Excited
आपकी <i>adj.</i>	<i>aapakii</i>	Yours
अतिथि <i>n.m.</i>	<i>atithii</i>	Guest

प्रिय मजबान परिवार,
नमस्ते!

मेरा नाम जेन हूँ मैं बाईस साल की हूँ मैं एक विश्वविद्यालय में छात्रा हूँ मेरा मेजर संगीत हूँ मैं अमेरिका के वसिकॉन्सनि राज्य से हूँ मगर, मैं न्यू-यॉर्क में रहती हूँ मेरा फोन नंबर 555-xxx-xxxx है मेरा ई.मेल एड्रेस jen@gmail.com है

मैं आप लोगों से मिलने के लिए बहुत उत्साहित हूँ
आपकी अतिथि
जेन

Test Yourself

Question Answer

Based on the above reading about Jen. Please answer the following questions.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1284#h5p-15>

Activity

Imagine that you are meeting someone new either on social media or face-to-face. Please introduce yourself and end by saying “Nice to meet you, bye.” You can record yourself and share this with your friends/teacher and also on social media.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1284#h5p-38>

धन्यवाद !

2.6 Grammar: Gender and Number



Gender

Instructor Video: [Gender](#)

In Hindi, nouns can be divided into two types of gender, namely पुलगि “Masculine,” and स्त्रीलिंगि “Feminine.” Like English, Hindi has natural gender such as boy and girl, man and woman. Unlike English though, Hindi has grammatical gender. For example: Book, table, etc. are female. Whereas, room, house, door, etc. are male.

There is no certain rules to learn about gender assignment to particular noun in Hindi. Based on common observation, masculine and feminine nouns can be further classified in two subcategories as shown in the following table (1).

	Masculine	Feminine
Marked (Type 1)	Nouns that ends in -आ “-aa.”	Nouns that ends in -ई/ई “-i/ii.”
Examples	लड़का <i>laRakaa</i> “boy.” कमरा <i>kamaraa</i> “room.” बच्चा <i>bachchaa</i> “boy child.” दरवाजा <i>darawaazaa</i> “door.”	लड़की <i>laRakii</i> “girl” बच्ची <i>bachchii</i> “girl child.” खड़की <i>khiRakii</i> “window.” कुरसी <i>kursii</i> “chair.”
Unmarked (Type 2)	Nouns that do not end in -आ “-aa.”	Nouns that do not end in -ई/ई “-i/ii.”
Examples	घर <i>ghar</i> “home.” फल <i>phal</i> “fruit.” सेब <i>seb</i> “apple.” पुस्तकालय <i>pustakaalay</i> “library.”	किताब <i>kitaab</i> “book.” मेज <i>mez</i> “table.” तस्वीर <i>tasviir</i> “picture.” कमीज <i>kamiiz</i> “shirt.”

Table 1. Sub-categories of Masculine and Feminine Gender
But these rules have multiple exceptions such as:

Nouns ending in -आ “-aa” but feminine.

- माता *maataa* “mother.”
- लता *lataa* “leaf,”
- घटा *ghaTaa* “cloud”
- दवा *dawaa* “medicine,” etc.

Nouns ending in -इ/ई “-i/ii” but masculine.

- साथी *saathii* “Friend.”
- हाथी *hathii* “Elephant.”
- आदमी *aadamii* “Man” etc.

Test Yourself



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basic hindi/?p=768#h5p-13>

Number

Instructor Video: [Number](#)

Like English, Hindi has two numbers, namely, singular number, and plural number. To change singular nouns into plurals in Hindi, it is important to know the gender of the nouns and apply the following rules.

- All marked masculine nouns (that end in -आ “-aa.”) change into -ए “-e.”
- Unmarked masculine nouns (that do not end in -आ “-aa.”) do not change their form in plural.
- All marked feminine nouns (that end in -इ/ई “i/ii.”) change into -इयाँ “-iyan.”
- Unmarked feminine nouns (that do not end in -इ/ई “i/ii.”) change into -यें/एँ “-yen.”

The following table (2) summarizes these rules and shows examples.

	Masculine	Feminine
Marked (Type 1)	Nouns that ends in -आ “-aa.”	Nouns that ends in -ई/ई “-i/ii.”
Rule for plural	change -आ “-aa” into -ए “-e”	change -ई/ई “-i/ii” into -इया “-iyan”
Examples	लड़का – लड़के laRake “boys.” कमरा – कमरे kamare “rooms.” बच्चा – बच्चे bachche “boy children.” दरवाजा – दरवाजे darawaaze “door.s”	लड़की – लड़कियाँ laRakyani “girls” बच्ची – बच्चियाँ bachchiyan “girl children.” खड़की – खड़कियाँ khiRakiyan “windows.” कुरसी – कुरसियाँ kursiyen “chairs.”
Unmarked (Type 2)	Nouns that do not end in -आ “-aa.”	Nouns that do not end in -ई/ई “-i/ii.”
Rule for plural	No changes in form	change into -ये/ए “-yen.”
Examples	घर – घर ghar “homes.” फल – फल phal “fruits.” सेब – सेब seb “apples.” पुस्तकालय – पुस्तकालय pustakaalay “libraries.”	कतिब – कतिबों kitaaben “books.” मेज – मेजें mezen “tables” तस्वीर – तस्वीरें taswiiren “pictures.” कमीज – कमीजें kamiizen “shirts.”








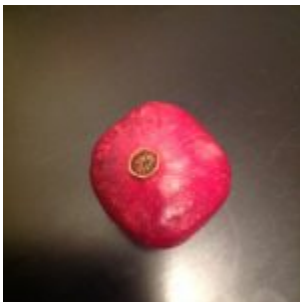

Table 2. Summary for rules to change singular to plural nouns based on the sub-categories of Masculine and Feminine Gender.

Test yourself

घर-गृहस्थी (House & household) Please learn these vocabulary and change them into plural.			
Singular Nouns	gender	Meaning	Plural Nouns
दीवार	f.	wall	
दूध	m.	milk	
मकान	m.	house	
फर्श	m.	floor	
कुरसी	f.	chair	
दरवाज़ा	m.	door	
खड़की	f.	window	
छत	f.	roof, ceiling	
गुमलखाना	m.	bathroom	
तौलिया	m.	towel	
तेल	m.	oil	
साबुन	m.	soap	
आईना / शीशा	m.	mirror	
कंघी	f.	comb	
अलमारी	f.	cupboard, wardrobe, shelf	
खाट	f.	cot	
पलंग	m.	bed	
चादर	f.	sheet	
रज़ाई	f.	quilt	
कबल	m.	blanket	
तकिया	m.	pillow	
लैप	m.	lamp	
बल्ब	m.	bulb	
घडी	f.	watch, clock	
चाकू	m.	knife	
तस्वीर	f.	picture, photograph	
कलेंडर	m.	calendar	
थैला	m.	bag	
मोमबत्ती	f.	candle	
इस्तरी	f.	iron	
रसोई	f.	kitchen	

कटोरा	m.	big bowl	
कटोरी	f.	small bowl	
थाली	f.	metal plate	
बर्तन	m.	utensil	
कड़ाही	f.	a frying pan, wok	
गलास	m.	glass	
चूल्हा	m.	stove	
चाबी	f.	key	
ताला	m.	lock	
चमिटा	m.	tongs	
पतीला	m.	cooking vessel	
तवा	m.	skillet	
चकला	m.	rolling board	
चौकी	f.	kneading board/ rectangular seat/bench	
प्याला	m.	cup	
झाड़ू	f.	broom	
परदा	m.	curtain	
टोपी	f.	cap	
मोज़ा	m.	socks	
रूमाल	m.	handkerchief	

Vocabulary 5. Names of Fruits and Vegetables

फलों के नाम "Names of fruits"		
		
सेब <i>m. apple</i>	आम <i>m. mango</i>	केला <i>m. banana</i>
		
संतरा <i>m. orange</i>	तरबूज <i>m. watermelon</i>	अनन्नास <i>m. pineapple</i>
		
पपीता <i>m. papaya</i>	अन्नार <i>m. pomegranate</i>	अंगूर <i>m. grapes</i>

सब्जियों के नाम "Names of Vegetables"



आलू m. potato



प्याज़ m. onion



टमाटर m. tomato



पालक m. spinach



मटर m. peas



फूल गोभी f. cauliflower



धनिया



पत्ता गोभी f. cabbage



बैंगन m. egg plant



शमिला मर्च f. bell pepper



नींबू m. lemon



खीरा m. cucumber

Test Yourself

True/False



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=768#h5p-17>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=768#h5p-18>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=768#h5p-19>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=768#h5p-20>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=768#h5p-21>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=768#h5p-22>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=768#h5p-23>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=768#h5p-24>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=768#h5p-25>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=768#h5p-26>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=768#h5p-27>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=768#h5p-28>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=768#h5p-29>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=768#h5p-30>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=768#h5p-31>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=768#h5p-32>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=768#h5p-33>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=768#h5p-34>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=768#h5p-35>



An interactive H₅P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=768#h5p-36>

Vocabulary Test



An interactive H₅P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=768#h5p-16>

धन्यवाद!

2.7 Personal Pronouns with Verb "To be"



Verb "To be"

Instructor Video: [Verb "to be"](#)

Singular pronouns and verb "to be."			Plural pronouns and verb "to be."		
<u>Hindi</u>	<u>Transliteration</u>	<u>English</u>	<u>Hindi</u>	<u>Transliteration</u>	<u>English</u>
मैं_हूँ	main _hoon	I am _.	हम_हैं	hum _hain	We are _.
तू_है	tu _hai	You are _.			
तुम_हो	tum _ho	You are _.	तुम_हो	tum _ho	You are _.
आप_हैं	aap _hain	You are _.	आप_हैं	aap _hain	You are _.
यह/वह_है	ye/wo _hai	S/he, This/That is _.	ये/वे_हैं	ye/we _hain	They, These/Those are _.

Table 3. List of Personal pronouns with the forms of verb होना "to be."

Summary

Verb “to be”	Pronouns	Examples
हूँ <i>hoon</i>	मैं	मैं अध्यापक हूँ <i>main adhyaapak hoon</i> . I am a teacher.
हो <i>ho</i>	तुम	तुम छात्र हो <i>tum chhaatr ho</i> . You are a student
है <i>hai</i>	तू, यह, वह (Singular pronouns)	तू लड़का है <i>tu laRkaa hai</i> . You are a boy. यह एक किताब है <i>ye ek kitaab hai</i> . This is a book. वह एक मेज है <i>wo ek mez hai</i> . That is a table. पीटर एक दोस्त है <i>Peter ek dost hai</i> . Peter is a friend.
हैं <i>hain</i>	हम, आप, ये, वे (Plural pronouns/honorific)	हम छात्र हैं <i>hum chhaatr hain</i> . We are students. आप अच्छे हैं <i>aap achche hain</i> . You are good. ये/वे किसान हैं <i>ye/we kisaan hain</i> . They are farmers. ये सब्जियाँ हैं <i>ye sabziyaan hain</i> . These are vegetables. वे फल हैं <i>we phal hain</i> . Those are fruits. फिलिप जी अध्यापक हैं <i>Philip ji adhyaapak hain</i> . Philip ji is my teacher.

Table 4. List of verb होना “to be,” with personal pronouns.

Positive Sentence and the Verb होना “to be”

Unlike English, the standard word order of Hindi is: Subject-Object-Verb (SOV).

Structure 1:

English	Subject	Verb	Object
	This	is	a pen
Hindi	Subject	Object	Verb
	This	a pen	is
	यह	एक कलम	है

Negative Sentence in Hindi and the Verb होना “to be”

Structure 2:

English	Subject	Verb	Negative	Object
	This	is	not	a pen
Hindi	Subject	Object	Negative	Verb
	This	a pen	not	is
	यह	एक कलम	नहीं	है

Yes/No question and the Verb होना “to be”

In English, we move auxiliary verb at the beginning of a sentence to form a yes/no question. Whereas, in Hindi, the word **क्या** *kyaa* is used at the beginning of a sentence to form a yes/no question. Please note that here the word **क्या** *kyaa* does not mean “what.”

Structure 3:

English	Auxiliary verb	Subject	Object	
	Is	this	a pen	
Hindi	क्या <i>kyaa</i>	Subject	Object	Verb
	Kyaa	this	a pen	is
	क्या	यह	एक कलम	है?

Yes/No question + Negative and the Verb होना “to be”

Structure 4:

English	Auxiliary verb	(negative)	Subject	(Negative)	Object
	Is	(not)	this	(not)	a pen
	Isn't this a pen? / Is this not a pen?				
Hindi	क्या <i>kyaa</i>	Subject	Object	Negative	Auxiliary Verb
	kyaa	this	a pen	not	is
	क्या	यह	एक कलम	नहीं	है?

Activities

Now as you know how to change a simple Hindi sentence into Negative, yes/no question, and yes/no question + negative, please fill the following table as instructed.

<u>Positive</u>	<u>Negative</u>	<u>Yes/No Question</u>	<u>Yes/No Question + Negative</u>
मैं अध्यापक हूँ।			
	हम दोस्त नहीं हैं।		
		क्या वे छात्र हैं?	
			क्या आप हिन्दुस्तानी नहीं हैं?
तू भाई है।			
	तुम छात्रा नहीं हो।		
		क्या यह आलू है?	
			क्या वह टमाटर नहीं है?

Please fill in the blanks with suitable object to form five sentences with each pronoun given below. You can use the vocabulary list in this chapter or dictionary for any help that you need to complete this activity.

Subject	Object	Verb "to be."	English
मैं	एक अध्यापक	हूँ	I am a teacher.
मैं			
मैं			
मैं			
मैं			
हम	दोस्त	हैं	We are friends.
हम			
हम			
हम			
हम			
तू	होशियार	है	You are smart.
तू			
तू			
तू			
तू			
तुम	एक लड़के	हो	You are a boy.
तुम			
तुम			
तुम			
तुम			
आप	अच्छी	हैं	You (female) are good.
आप			
आप			
आप			
आप			
यह	एक कतिब	है	This is a book.
यह			
यह			
यह			
यह			
वह	आपका तौलिया	है	That is your towel.
वह			
वह			

वह			
वह			
ये	सब्जियाँ	हैं।	These are vegetables.
ये			
ये			
ये			
ये			
ये			
वे	क्या	हैं?	What are those?
वे			
वे			
वे			
वे			

Test Yourself



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=770#h5p-37>

धन्यवाद !

2.8 Cultural Notes and Extra/ Optional Online Materials



Cultural Notes

Topics	Explanation
Namaste नमस्ते	<i>Namaste</i> is used by Hello and bye at any time of a day by Hindi speakers. It is culturally odd to shake hands so when you say <i>namaste</i> then just make the hand gesture. However, in business setting and bigger metropolitan cities, you will notice that people shake hands because of the effect of western world.
Personal Pronoun “You”	Unlike English, Hindi has three different second person, personal pronoun, “you.” तू <i>tu</i> : It is used with younger, intimate relation such as mother, and God, and some one who is lower in socio-economic status. It is a very informal way to say “You” in Hindi. तुम <i>tum</i> : It is used with friends, and with someone who is of equal status. It is somewhat informal. It should be used carefully only after confirming with the person you are speaking to. आप <i>aap</i> : It is used with older and respected people of the community. It is also used for someone who is of higher socio-economic status. It is a very formal way to say “You” in Hindi.
Introduction	Typically, in Hindi speaking culture, you typically do not have to go on introducing yourself to everyone. Culturally, you will be introduced to other people by your host, a friend, and/or someone who already knows you. However, you should expect some very personal questions which may be culturally odd for you in your first meeting with someone, such as: are you married? how much money do you earn? etc. Please know that the sense of privacy is very different in different cultures.
Yes/No Question	You learned in this chapter that you can simply add क्या <i>kyaa</i> , at the beginning of a simple sentence to form a yes/no question. For example: क्या आप अमेरिकी हैं? Are you an American? However, it is very common for the native speakers to pose yes/no question by using simple sentence in raised tone. It is also very common in English. For example: आप अमेरिकी हैं? You are an American?
Gender	In this chapter, you learned that all Hindi nouns have grammatical gender. However, you may hear the native speakers to use Hindi words with incorrect gender during the conversation. It is because of two major reasons: (a) Not every one knows the gender of the noun hundred percent, (b) there are many dialects of Hindi which are mutually intelligible but do not have gender feature. So, they claim to be the native speaker of Hindi but their L1/mother tongue is not modern standard Hindi.

Extra/Optional Online Materials

Self-introduction:



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1281#oembed-1>

धन्यवाद !

CHAPTER 3: परिवार "FAMILY"



"Miami Puppy Cam Family PIC 7-16-2011" by lonnypaul is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0

Goals of this Chapter

- In this chapter, you will begin with review of chapter 2.
- You will learn kinship vocabulary.
- You will learn how to introduce your family members
- You will learn adjectives to describe your family members.
- You will learn how to ask question to learn more about family members.
- In grammar, you will learn about adjectives.
- You will learn how adjective and noun conjugate.
- You will learn degree of adjectives.
- You will learn possessive maker का/की/के ('s) in Hindi.
- You will learn Wh- question words.
- You will learn how to form a Wh- question sentence in Hindi.

धन्यवाद !

3.1 Review Concepts from Chapter 2



Vocabulary



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=844#h5p-42>

Multiple Choice Questions on Gender, Number and Verb “to be”



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=844#h5p-40>

बातचीत “Conversation”



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=844#h5p-41>

धन्यवाद !

3.2 Reading/Listening 1: मेरा परिवार



मेरा परिवार “My Family”



“Family Bath Time” by Steve Wilson — over 10 million views Thanks !! is licensed under CC BY 2.0

Vocabulary

Family members and relatives

Hindi	Grammatical Categories	English
परिवार	n.m.	Family
रश्तेदार	n.m.	Relative
माँ/ माता	n.f.	Mother
पति	n.m.	Father
भाई	n.m.	Brother
भाभी	n.f.	Brother's wife
बहन / बहनि	n.f.	Sister
बहनोई	n.m.	Sister's husband
दादा	n.m.	Paternal Grand father
दादी	n.f.	Paternal Grand mother
नाना	n.m.	Maternal Grand father
नानी	n.f.	Maternal Grand mother
चाचा	n.m.	Father's brother
चाची	n.f.	Father's brother's wife
बुआ	n.f.	Father's sister
फूफा	n.m.	Father's sister's husband
मामा	n.m.	Mother's brother
मामी	n.f.	Mother's brother's wife
मौसी	n.f.	Mother's sister
मौसा	n.m.	Mother's sister's husband
चचेरा भाई / चचेरी बहन	n.m./f.	Cousin brother-sister (kids of चाचा-चाची)
फूफेरा भाई / फूफेरी बहन	n.m./f.	Cousin brother-sister (kids of बुआ-फूफा)
ममेरा भाई / ममेरी बहन	n.m./f.	Cousin brother-sister (kids of मामा-मामी)
मौसेरा भाई / मौसेरी बहन	n.m./f.	Cousin brother-sister (kids of मौसा-मौसी)
सौतेला भाई / सौतेली बहन	n.m./f.	Half brother/sister
पालतू कुत्ता / बिल्ली	n.m./f.	Pet dog / cat
शादी के बाद के रश्तेदार "Family after marriage"		
पति	n.m.	Husband
पत्नी	n.f.	Wife
बेटा	n.m.	Son
बेटी	n.f.	Daughter

बहू	n.f.	Daughter-in-law
दामाद	n.m.	Son-in-law
सास	n.f.	Mother-in-law
ससुर	n.m.	Father-in-law
साला	n.m.	Brother-in-law (from the husband's point of view)
साली	n.f.	Sister-in-law (from the husband's point of view)
देवर	n.m.	Brother-in-law (from the wife's point of view)
देवरानी	n.f.	Wife of a brother-in-law (from the wife's point of view)
ननद	n.f.	Sister-in-law (from the wife's point of view)
ननदोई	n.m.	Husband of sister-in-law (from the wife's point of view)

Test Yourself



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basic hindi/?p=805#h5p-43>

परिवार के बारे में “About the family”

Context: Shilpa and Peter are in the same Hindi class. Their teacher, Akshay, asked them to collect information about each other's family members. In this reading/listening, they are asking questions to each other.

Pre-reading Activity 1: Please respond to the following questions. Please write your response in Hindi in the given space.

Hindi	English	Your response in Hindi
आपका नाम	YOUR NAME	
आपके पिता जी का नाम	YOUR FATHER'S NAME	
आपकी माता जी का नाम	YOUR MOTHER'S NAME	
आपके कितने भाई हैं?	HOW MANY BROTHER DO YOU HAVE?	
भाइयों के नाम	YOUR BROTHERS' NAMES	
आपकी कितनी बहनें हैं?	HOW MANY SISTERS DO YOU HAVE?	
बहनों के नाम	YOUR SISTERS' NAMES	
आपके दादा जी का नाम	YOUR PATERNAL GRAND-FATHER'S NAME	
आपकी दादी जी का नाम	YOUR PATERNAL GRAND-MOTHER'S NAME	
क्या आपके पास कोई पालतू जानवर है?	DO YOU HAVE ANY PET?	
पालतू जानवर का नाम	YOUR PET'S NAME	

Pre-reading Activity 2: Based on the above information, please draw a family tree.

Reading

Please read the following conversation aloud with a partner (or alone)

Hindi	English
शिल्पा: नमस्ते पीटर ! आप कैसे हैं?	Shilpa: Hello Peter! How are you?
पीटर: नमस्ते शिल्पा, मैं अच्छा हूँ धन्यवाद और आप ?	Peter: Hello Shilpa, I am well, thanks. And you?
शिल्पा: मैं भी ठीक हूँ। धन्यवाद चलिये, काम शुरू करते हैं।	Shilpa: I am okay too. Thanks. Let's start the work.
पीटर: ठीक है बताइये, आपका परिवार कहाँ रहता है?	Peter: Okay. Please tell, where does your family live?
शिल्पा: मेरा परिवार शिकागो में रहता है। और आपका ?	Shilpa: My family lives in Chicago. And yours?
पीटर: मेरा परिवार डेट्रोइट में है।	Peter: My family lives in Detroit.
शिल्पा: आपकी माता जी का नाम क्या है?	Shilpa: What is your mother's name?
पीटर: मेरी माँ का नाम लजि है। आपकी माँ का नाम क्या है?	Peter: My mother's name is Liz. What is your mother's name?
शिल्पा: मेरी माँ का नाम देवीकी पटेल है। आपकी माँ क्या करती हैं?	Shilpa: My mother's name is Devaki Patel. What does your mother do?
पीटर: मेरी माँ एक वदियालय में अध्यापिका हैं। और आपकी माँ?	Peter: My mother is a school teacher. and your mother?
शिल्पा: मेरी माँ एक गृहिणी हैं। आपके पति जी का नाम क्या है?	Shilpa: My mother is a house-wife. What is your father's name?
पीटर: मेरे पति जी का नाम एडम है, और 'वह/वे' [In some books, one can also find use of 'वे' for 3rd person singular honorific subject. In any case, वह and वे both are pronounced 'वो'] एक डॉक्टर हैं। और आपके पति जी का नाम क्या है और वह/वे क्या करते हैं?	Peter: My father's name is Adam, he is a doctor. What is your father's name and what does he do?
शिल्पा: मेरे पति जी का नाम कृष्णचंद पटेल है, और वह/वे एक वैज्ञानिक हैं।	Shilpa: My father's name is Krishnachand Patel, and he is a scientist.
पीटर: आपके कितने भाई बहन हैं?	Peter: How many brothers and sisters do you have?
शिल्पा: मेरा एक भाई है, उसका नाम साहिल है। मेरी कोई बहन नहीं है। और आपके कितने भाई बहन हैं?	Shilpa: I have a brother, his name is Sahil. I have no sisters. And how many brothers and sisters do you have?
पीटर: मैं इकलौता हूँ। मेरे कोई भाई बहन नहीं हैं।	Peter: I am only one. I have no brothers and sisters.
शिल्पा: क्या आपके दादा-दादी भी आपके साथ डेट्रोइट में रहते हैं?	Shilpa: Do your grand-parents live with you in Detroit?
पीटर: नहीं मेरे दादा-दादी हमारे साथ नहीं रहते। उनका अपना अलग घर है। क्या आपके दादा-दादी आपके साथ रहते हैं?	Peter: No, my grand-parents do not live with us. They have their own separate house. Do your grand-parents live with you?
शिल्पा: जी हाँ। हिन्दुस्तानी परिवार में, माता-पति, भाई-बहन, दादा-दादी, चाचा-चाची, सब एक साथ एक घर में रहते हैं।	Shilpa: Yes, In an Indian family, mother-father, brother-sister, grand-parents, uncle-aunt, all live together in the same house.
पीटर: अरे वाह ! यह तो बहुत अच्छी बात है। अच्छा, फिर मिलेंगे, नमस्ते।	Peter: Oh Wao! This is a very good thing. Okay, see you again, Namaste.
शिल्पा: ठीक है, बाय	Shilpa: Okay, Bye

Listening

परिवार के बारे में

Activities

Please provide the following information about Shipa and Peter. Please note that some answers may not be available in the text, you can leave them blank.

सवाल "Questions"	शिल्पा	पीटर
x का परिवार कहाँ रहता है?		
x की माता जी का नाम		
x की माता जी क्या करती हैं?		
x के पति जी का नाम		
x के पति जी क्या करते हैं?		
x के कतिने भाई-बहन हैं?		
x के भाई का नाम		
x की बहन का नाम		

Family Tree: Based on the above reading/listening, please draw Shilpa's and Peter's family trees.

Writing/Speaking

Based on your pre-reading, and reading, please write (10-15 sentences)/audio record introducing your own family members.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=805#h5p-38>

Complete the following conversation: Please choose the correct question/prompt for each answer/response in the following conversation.





An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=805#h5p-44>

धन्यवाद !

3.3 Reading/Listening 2: वद्व्या का परवार



वद्व्या का परवार और उसके रशुतेदार “Vidya’s family and her relatives”



“Dashain Celebration in Nepal” by stewickie is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0

Vocabulary

Vidya's family and relatives

Hindi	Grammatical Categories	English
मेरा	adj.	My
हमारा	adj.	Our
तेरा	adj.	Your
तुम्हारा	adj.	Your
आपका	adj.	Your
इसका / उसका	adj.	His / Her
इनका / उनका	adj.	Their
कसिका	adj.	Whose (for singular)
कनिका	adj.	Whose (for plural)
छोटा	adj.	Small / Younger
बड़ा	adj.	Big / Older
प्यारा	adj.	Lovely
सुखी	adj.	Happy
दुखी	adj.	Sad
स्वच्छ	adj.	Clean
साफ़	adj.	Clean
शुद्ध	adj.	Pure
गन्दा	adj.	Dirty
कुशल	adj.	Skilled
अकुशल	adj.	Unskilled
अभियंता	n.m.	Engineer
सरल	adj.	Simple / Easy
मशकिल	adj.	Difficult/ Hard
महिला	n.f.	Woman
पुरुष	n.m.	Man
अच्छा	adj.	Good
बुरा	adj.	Bad
खराब	adj.	Bad
अध्यापिका	n.f.	Female teacher
होशियार	adj.	Intelligent
तेज़	adj.	Intelligent / Fast/ clever
चतुर	adj.	Clever

मूर्ख	adj.	Foolish
सुन्दर	adj.	Beautiful
खूबसूरत	adj.	Beautiful
बदसूरत	adj.	Ugly
कुरूप	adj.	Ugly
लंबा	adj.	Tall
नाटा	adj.	Short (in height)
बूढ़ा / बूढ़ी	adj.	Old (For animate nouns)
पुराना / पुरानी	adj.	Old (For inanimate nouns)
सदस्य	n.m.	Member
लोग	n.m.	People
त्योहार	n.m.	Festival
कुछ	adj.	Some
धनी / अमीर	adj.	Rich
नरिधन / गरीब	adj.	Poor
मोटा	adj.	Fat/Big
पतला	adj.	Thin
ईमानदार	adj.	Honest
बईमान	adj.	Dishonest
व्यापारी	n.m.	Business man/woman
कुंवारी / कुंवारा	adj.	Unmarried woman/man
शादीशुदा	adj.	Married
महेनती	adj.	Hard-working
आलसी	adj.	Lazy
सामाजिक	adj.	Social
कार्यकर्ता	n.m.	Worker
प्रसिद्ध	adj.	Famous
मशहूर	adj.	Famous
बदनाम	adj.	Infamous
गायिका	n.f.	Female singer
किसान	n.m.	Farmer
गृहिणी	n.f.	House wife
सुख-दुःख की घड़ी	phrase	in the time of happiness and sorrow
साथ देना	v.t	To support

Test Yourself



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=832#h5p-48>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=832#h5p-47>

Pre-reading activity: Please respond to the following questions/prompts about your relatives.
Please write your response in Hindi in the given space.

Hindi	English	Your response
आपके परिवार में कतिने सदस्य हैं?	HOW MANY MEMBERS ARE THERE IN YOUR FAMILY?	
आपके कतिने चाचा हैं? और उनके नाम क्या हैं?	HOW MANY UNCLES DO YOU HAVE? AND WHAT ARE THEIR NAMES?	
आपकी कतिनी चाची हैं? और उनके नाम क्या हैं?	HOW MANY AUNTS DO YOU HAVE? AND WHAT ARE THEIR NAMES?	
आपके कतिने चचेरे भाई-चचेरी बहन हैं?	HOW MANY COUSINS DO YOU HAVE?	
आपकी कतिनी बुआ हैं? और उनके नाम क्या हैं?	HOW MANY AUNTS DO YOU HAVE? AND WHAT ARE THEIR NAMES?	
आपके कतिने फूफा हैं? और उनके नाम क्या हैं?	HOW MANY UNCLES DO YOU HAVE? AND WHAT ARE THEIR NAMES?	
आपके कतिने फूफरे भाई-फूफरी बहन हैं?	HOW MANY COUSINS DO YOU HAVE?	
आपके कतिने मामा हैं? और उनके नाम क्या हैं?	HOW MANY UNCLES DO YOU HAVE? AND WHAT ARE THEIR NAMES?	
आपकी कतिनी मामी हैं? और उनके नाम क्या हैं?	HOW MANY AUNTS DO YOU HAVE? AND WHAT ARE THEIR NAMES?	
आपके कतिने ममेरे भाई-ममेरी बहन हैं?	HOW MANY COUSINS DO YOU HAVE?	

आपकी कतिनी मौसी हैं? और उनके नाम क्या हैं?	HOW MANY AUNTS DO YOU HAVE? AND WHAT ARE THEIR NAMES?	
आपके कतिने मौसा हैं? और उनके नाम क्या हैं?	HOW MANY UNCLES DO YOU HAVE? AND WHAT ARE THEIR NAMES?	
आपके कतिने मौसरे भाई-मौसरे बहन हैं?	HOW MANY COUSINS DO YOU HAVE?	

Reading

Please read the following text aloud

नमस्ते!

मेरा नाम बद्धि है। मेरा एक छोटा परिवार है। मैं अपने प्यारे और सुखी परिवार के साथ स्वच्छ मशिन के एक बड़े शहर डेट्रोइट में रहती हूँ। मेरे पति जी एक कुशल अभियंता हैं। मेरी माँ एक सरल हिन्दिस्तानी महिला हैं। मेरी माँ एक अच्छी अध्यापिका हैं। मेरे एक बड़े भाई हैं। वह/वे एक होशियार छात्र हैं। मेरी एक छोटी बहन हैं। वह बहुत सुन्दर हैं। मेरी बहन मझ सेलम्बी हैं। मेरे बड़े दादा जी और बड़ी दादी जी भी हमारे साथ रहते हैं। सब मिलाकर, मेरे परिवार में सात सदस्य/लोग हैं।

मेरा परिवार, हर त्यौहार में, रश्तिदारों को अपने घर बुलाता है। हमारे कुछ रश्तिदार बहुत धनी या अमीर हैं, मगर कुछ रश्तिदार कुछ गरीब भी हैं। मेरे बड़े चाचा और चाची शिकागो में रहते हैं। मेरे चाचा मेरे पति जी से मोटे हैं। मेरे चाचा एक ईमानदार पुलिस कर्मी हैं। मेरी चाची एक चतुर व्यापारी हैं। मेरी बुआ अभी कुँवारी हैं। वह एक मेहनती सामाजिक कार्यकर्ता हैं। मेरे मामा और मौसी अभी हिन्दिस्तानी में हैं। मेरे मामा एक प्रसिद्ध प्रोफेसर हैं। मेरी मौसी एक मशहूर गायिका हैं। मेरे बड़े नाना जी एक किसान थे। मेरी नानी एक कुशल गृहिणी थी।

हमारे रश्तिदार हर सुख-दुख की घड़ी में एक दूसरे का साथ देते हैं।

धन्यवाद !

Listening

बद्धि का परिवार

Activities

Answer the following questions



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=832#h5p-46>

Please click on all the adjectives in the following text.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=832#h5p-45>

Writing/Speaking

Please make a power-point presentation about your family and your relatives (extended) family in about 20-25 sentences. You can use photos of your family members and relatives. After making your presentation, please video record your presentation and share it with your friends/teacher. Please make sure to use at least 10 adjectives to describe your family members and relatives.

धन्यवाद !

3.4 Study Abroad



Study Abroad Reading/Listening Activity



“Maid Family, Darewadi, India — January 2007” by World Resources is licensed under CC BY-NC-SA 2.0.

Context: In the chapter 2, Jen wrote a letter to her host family introducing herself. In this chapter, I am including a letter from her host mother introducing her family.

Pre-Reading/Listening Activity



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basic hindi/?p=1299#h5p-49>

Reading: सीता का पत्र “Sita’s letter”

प्रिय जेन,
नमस्ते!

आपका पत्र मिला और उसे पढ़ कर बहुत खुशी हुई। इस पत्र में, मैं आपको अपने परिवार के बारे में बताऊँगी। जैसा कि आप जानती हैं, मेरा परिवार दिल्ली में रहता है। दिल्ली भारत की राजधानी है।

मेरा परिवार बहुत बड़ा है। आशा करती हूँ कि आपको संयुक्त परिवार में रहने का अच्छा अनुभव होगा। मैं अपने पति और उनके बड़े परिवार के साथ रहती हूँ। मेरे पति श्री रामचन्द्र सहि पचपन साल के हैं, और एक सरकारी कार्यालय में काम करते हैं। मेरे दो बच्चे हैं, एक लड़का राजवीर, और एक लड़की रजनी हैं। मेरे ससुर श्री दशरथ प्रसाद सहि, लगभग अससी साल के हैं, और सेवा-नवित्त हैं। मेरी सास का नाम श्रीमती कौशल्या देवी है। वह/वे एक घरेलू और धार्मिक महिला हैं। मेरे दो छोटे देवर (पति के भाई) और एक छोटी ननद (पति की बहन) हैं। छोटे देवरो के नाम लक्ष्मण सहि और भरत सहि हैं। लक्ष्मण एक नज्जि कंपनी में काम करते हैं और शादीशुदा हैं। उनकी एक तीन साल की बेटी है। भरत अभी पढ़ाई कर रहे हैं और कुँवारे हैं। मेरी ननद का नाम सरस्वती है। सरस्वती पच्चीस साल की एक सुन्दर और कुँवारी लड़की हैं। वह क्रिकेट की एक बहुत अच्छी खिलाड़ी हैं। वह दिल्ली के लिए क्रिकेट खेलती हैं।

इनके अलावा, मेरे घर में एक नौकरानी है। उसका नाम रूपा है। रूपा घर की साफ-सफाई करती हैं। हमारा एक पालतू कुत्ता भी है। हम प्यार से उसे टाइगर बुलाते हैं।

आशा है कि हम जल्दी मिलेंगे। नमस्ते!

आपकी मेजबान मा

सीता

Listening

सीता का पत्र

Activities

Based on the above reading/listening, please respond to the following questions/prompts.

Hindi	English	Your response
जेने कौन है?	Who is Jen?	
सीता कौन है?	Who is Sita?	
सीता का परिवार कहाँ रहता है?	Where does Sita's family live?	
भारत की राजधानी कहाँ है?	Where is the capital of India?	
सीता के ससुर का नाम क्या है?	What is the name of Sita's father-in-law ?	
सीता के ससुर की उम्र क्या है?	What is the age of Sita's father-in-law?	
सीता के ससुर क्या करते हैं?	What does Sita's father-in-law do?	
सीता की सास कौसी महिला है?	What type of woman Sita's mother-in-law is?	
सीता के पत का नाम क्या है?	What is the name of Sita's husband?	
सीता के पत की उम्र क्या है?	What is the age of Sita's husband?	
सीता के पत क्या करते हैं?	What does Sita's husband do?	
सीता के कतिने बच्चे हैं?	How many children does Sita have?	
सीता के कतिने देवर हैं?	How many brothers-in-law Sita has?	
सीता के देवरो के नाम क्या हैं?	What are the names of Sita's brothers-in-law?	
सीता की कतिनी ननद हैं?	How many sisters-in-law Sita has?	
सीता की ननद का नाम क्या है?	What is the name of Sita's sister-in-law?	
सीता की ननद क्या करती हैं?	What does Sita's sister-in-law do?	
सीता की नौकरानी का नाम क्या है?	What is the name of Sita's maid servant?	
सीता की नौकरानी क्या करती है?	What does Sita's maid servant do?	
टाइगर कौन है?	Who is Tiger?	

Family Tree: Based on the reading/listening to Sita's letter to Jen. Please draw a Sita's family tree.

Make Sentences: Please form a sentence with each word given below.

Hindi	English	Sentence
अच्छा	Good	
बुरा	bad	
लंबा	Tall/Long	
छोटा	Short/Small/Younger	
बड़ा	Big/Elder	
सुन्दर	Beautiful	
कुरूप	Ugly	
होशियार	Intelligent	
मूर्ख	Foolish	
मोटा	Fat/Big	

धन्यवाद !

3.5 Grammar of Adjectives



Adjectives Video

Instructor Video: [Adjectives](#)

Adjectives qualify nouns and pronouns. In Hindi, adjectives can be classified in two categories: (a) Marked, and (b) Unmarked.

(a) Marked Adjectives end in -आ. Marked adjective changes its form according to number and gender of the noun that it qualifies.

-आ : -आ ending adjective is for masculine singular.

-ए : -आ changes in -ए for plural nouns, and masculine honorific.

-ई : -आ changes in -ई for feminine noun.

Examples:

अच्छा लड़का (m.) “good boy,” अच्छी लड़की (f.) “good girl,” अच्छे बच्चे (plu.) “good children.”
 बड़ा घर (m.) “big house,” बड़ी दीवार (f.) “big wall,” बड़े घर (plu.) “big houses.”
 लंबा आदमी (m.) “tall man,” लंबी औरत (f.) “tall woman,” लंबे लोग (plu.) “tall people.”

Exception: There are a few adjectives like बढ़िया “good,” ज़िंदा “alive,” and मादा “female,” etc that end in -आ but do not change their forms according to number and gender of the nouns that these adjectives qualify. Most of these adjectives are Persian-Arabic loan words.

(b) Unmarked Adjectives are adjectives that do not end in -आ. Unmarked adjective does not change its form according to number and gender of the noun that it qualifies.

Examples:

तेज़ लड़का (m.) “smart boy,” तेज़ लड़की (f.) “smart girl,” तेज़ बच्चे (plu.) “smart children.”
 मज़बूत घर (m.) “strong house,” मज़बूत दीवार (f.) “strong wall,” मज़बूत घर (plu.) “strong houses.”
 अमीर आदमी (m.) “rich man,” अमीर औरत (f.) “rich woman,” अमीर लोग (plu.) “rich people.”

Word order for adjectives: Adjectives can be used predicatively (following), and attributively (preceding).

For examples:

Predicatively	Attributively
यह किताब अच्छी है। This book is good.	यह अच्छी किताब है। This is a good book.
वे लोग अमीर हैं। Those people are rich.	वे अमीर लोग हैं। They are rich people.
यह लड़का होशियार है। This boy is intelligent.	यह होशियार लड़का है। He is an intelligent boy.

Use of -सा with adjectives

In Hindi, -सा is used with adjectives to add extra meaning.

(a) **Adjective + सा:** It adds “looking, seeming.”

For example:

- मोटा सा आदमी “fat looking man.”
- अच्छी सी चाय “seemingly good tea.”
- पागल से बच्चे “seemingly crazy children.”

(b) **Quantitative Adjective + सा:**

- बहुत सा “a great deal.”
- थोड़ा सा “just a little.”

Activities

रंगों के नाम “Names of Colors”

Please read the following adjectives and decide whether the adjective is marked or unmarked adjective.

Hindi	English	Marked/Unmarked
काला	Black	
नीला	Blue	
भूरा	Brown	
धूसर/स्लेटी	Gray	
हरा	Green	
नारंगी	Orange	
बैंगनी	Purple	
लाल	Red	
सफेद	White	
पीला	Yellow	

Adjectives of Quality

Please read the following adjectives and decide whether the adjective is marked or unmarked adjective. Please also make a sentence with each adjective.

Hindi	English	Marked/Unmarked	Sentence
अच्छा	Good		
बुरा	Bad		
हल्का	Lite		
भारी	Heavy		
अँधेरा	Dark		
साफ़	Clean		
गंदा	Dirty		
आसान	Easy		
कठनि	Hard		
सस्ता	Cheap		
महँगा	Expensive		
नया	New (thing)		
पुराना	Old (thing)		
सही	Right		
गलत	Wrong		
मज़बूत	Strong		
कमज़ोर	Weak		
बूढ़ा	Old (person)		
जवान	Young		

Record your sentences here and share with your friends/teacher



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=835#h5p-38>

Please choose the correct form of adjective of the following noun.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=835#h5p-132>

धन्यवाद !

3.6 Apostrophe "S" ('s) in Hindi



Apostrophe "S" Video

Instructor Video: [Apostrophe s \('s\)](#)

In Hindi, genitive case/apostrophe s ('s) is expressed by a postposition का (kaa). In English, we can say “car of Ram,” and “Ram’s car” which mean the same thing. In Hindi, phrase like “car of Ram” is not possible. Hence, phrase like “Ram’s car” is used to express both kinds of phrases.

The postposition का (kaa) comes after nouns/pronouns, and it changes them from nouns to adjectives. का also changes its form according to number and gender of the following noun.

For examples:

- राम का घर (m.) = Ram’s home/ home of Ram
- राम की गाड़ी (f.) = Ram’s car/ car of Ram
- राम के दोस्त (plu.) = Ram’s friends/ friends of Ram
- सीता का कमरा (m.) = Sita’s room/ room of Sita
- सीता की कतिब (f.) = Sita’s book/ book of Sita
- सीता के बच्चे (plu.) = Sita’s children/ children of Sita

When का comes after a noun/pronoun then that noun/pronoun changes in oblique case (see chapter 4 for oblique case in details).

For examples

- लड़के का भाई (m.) = boy’s brother/ brother of a boy
- लड़के की बहन (f.) = boy’s sister/ sister of a boy
- लड़के के कपड़े (plu.) boy’s clothes/ clothes of a boy
- कमरे का दरवाजा (m.) = room’s door/ door of a room
- कमरे की खड़की (f.) = room’s window/ window of a room
- कमरे के पर्दे (plu.) = room’s curtains/ curtains of a room

Note: In above examples, लड़के and कमरे are in oblique form. They are not in the plural form, although the oblique and plural form of लड़का and कमरा look alike.

Activity

Please fill in the blanks with the correct form of का.

Noun	का/की/के	Noun	English
कमरे		परदे (m. plu.)	room's curtains
कमरे		दरवाजा (m. sing.)	room's door
कमरे		खड़कियाँ (f. plu.)	room's windows
ऋषि		भाई (m. sing.)	Rishi's brother
ऋषि		बहन (f. sing.)	Rishi's sister
ऋषि		पति जी (m. sing./hon)	Rishi's father
ऋषि		खिलौने (m. plu.)	Rishi's toys
शिल्पा		पति (m. sing./hon)	Shilpaa's husband
शिल्पा		सास (f. sing.)	Shilpaa's mother-in-law
शिल्पा		ननदें (f. plu.)	Shilpaa's sisters-in-law
शिल्पा		बच्चे (m. plu.)	Shilpaa's children
शिल्पा		ससुरा (m. sing./hon)	Shilpaa's father-in-law

Pronouns with का/की/के

Possessive pronoun/adjective is formed by adding का/की/के with personal pronouns. These pronouns change in oblique forms as shown in a table below.

Table: List of possessive pronouns/adjective				
English	Hindi	+ का/की/के	Hindi	English
I	मैं	+ का/की/के	मेरा / मेरी / मेरे	My
We	हम	+ का/की/के	हमारा / हमारी / हमारे	Our
You	तू	+ का/की/के	तेरा / तेरी / तेरे	Your
You	तुम	+ का/की/के	तुम्हारा / तुम्हारी / तुम्हारे	Your
You	आप	+ का/की/के	आपका / आपकी / आपके	Your
S/he (near)	यह	+ का/की/के	इसका / इसकी / इसके	His/her
S/he (far)	वह	+ का/की/के	उसका / उसकी / उसके	His/her
They (near)	ये	+ का/की/के	इनका / इनकी / इनके	Their
They (far)	वे	+ का/की/के	उनका / उनकी / उनके	Their
Who (Singular)	कौन	+ का/की/के	कसिका / कसिकी / कसिके	Whose
Who (plural)	कनि	+ का/की/के	कनिका / कनिकी / कनिके	Whose

Test Yourself



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1303#h5p-52>

धन्यवाद !

3.7 Degree of Adjectives



Degree of Adjectives Video

Instructor Video: [Degree of Adjectives](#)

In Hindi, there are three degrees of adjective: (a) positive, (b) comparative, and (c) superlative. For comparative X से se is used, where X is a noun with whom/which comparison is being done. For superlative degree, सबसे sabse is used.

For examples:

Adjective	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
बड़ा Big	शिकागो बड़ा शहर है। Chicago is a big city.	शिकागो लॉसिंग से बड़ा है। Chicago is bigger than Lansing	शिकागो सबसे बड़ा शहर है। Chicago is the biggest city.
लंबा Tall	मैं लंबा हूँ। I am tall.	मैं अपने भाई से लंबा हूँ। I am taller than my brother.	मैं सबसे लंबा हूँ। I am the tallest.
होशियार Intelligent	मेरी बहन होशियार है। My sister is intelligent.	मेरी बहन मुझ से होशियार है। My sister is more intelligent than me.	मेरी बहन सबसे होशियार है। My sister is the most intelligent.
महंगा expensive	कमीज महंगी है। Shirt is expensive.	कमीज पजामे से महंगी है। Shirt is more expensive than pajama.	कमीज सबसे महंगी है। Shirt is the most expensive.
सुन्दर Beautiful	यह तस्वीर सुन्दर है। This picture is beautiful.	यह तस्वीर उस से सुन्दर है। This picture is more beautiful than that.	यह तस्वीर सबसे सुन्दर है। This picture is the most beautiful.

Use of कुछ/जरा “a little” and ज्यादा/काफी “a lot”

In comparative sentences, कुछ/जरा and ज्यादा/काफी are used to further emphasize the meaning.

For example:

- यह किताब उस किताब से कुछ/जरा मोटी है। This book is a little thicker than that book
- यह कमरा उस कमरे से कुछ/जरा बड़ा है। This room is a little bigger than that room.
- यह किताब उस किताब से ज्यादा/काफी मोटी है। This book is a lot thicker than that book.
- यह कमरा उस कमरे से ज्यादा/काफी बड़ा है। This room is a lot bigger than that room.

Activities

By using comparative and superlative degrees of adjectives, please describe your family members in 10-15 sentences. After writing, please audio-record your sentences and share it with your friends/teacher.

For example: मेरा भाई मझुन से लंबा है। मेरे पति जी मेरे भाई से लंबे हैं। मेरे पति जी सबसे लंबे हैं। मैं अपने भाई से मोटा हूँ। मेरे पति जी सबसे मोटे हैं। _____



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1308#h5p-38>

धन्यवाद !

3.8 "Wh—" Question/Interrogative Sentence



“Wh-“ Questions Video

Instructor's Video: [Wh Question Sentences](#)

Hindi	English	Uses
क्या	What	To find out the object of a verb
कौन	Who	To find out the subject (human) of a verb
कसिको	Whom	To find out beneficiary in a sentence
कसिका / कसिकी / कसिके	Whose	For possession
कौन सा / सी / से	Which	To select one
कब	When	For time
कहाँ	Where	For place
क्यों	Why	For reason
कसा / कसाी / कसाे	How	For situation/condition and quality
कतिना/ कतिनी / कतिने	How many/much	For quantity

Test Yourself



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1312#h5p-51>

Formation of “Wh-” Question Sentences

In Hindi, to form a wh-question sentence, we should simply replace that part of a sentence by an appropriate question word.

For example:

- यह एक फल है | This is a fruit. — यह क्या है? **What** is this?
- राकेश मेरा भाई है | Rakesh is my brother — राकेश कौन है? **Who** is Rakesh?
- मैं भारत से हूँ | I am from India. — मैं कहाँ से हूँ? **Where** am I from?
- राकेश मेरा भाई है | Rakesh is my brother. — राकेश किसका भाई है? **Whose** brother is Rakesh?
- तुम ठीक हो | You are okay. — तुम कैसे हो? **How** are you?
- यहाँ दस वदियार्थी हैं | Ten students are here. — यहाँ कतिने वदियार्थी हैं? **How many** students are here?

Activity

Please change the following positive sentences into wh-question/interrogative sentences.

	Positive Sentences	Wh-question/Interrogative Sentence
1	मेरा नाम रजनी है।	
2	मेरी माँ का नाम कमला है।	
3	मैं उन्नीस साल की हूँ।	
4	मेरा फोन नंबर 555-xxx-xxxx है।	
5	वह हिन्दुस्तान से है।	
6	यह मेरा छोटा भाई है।	
7	यहाँ पाँच कतिबे हैं।	
8	मैं अच्छी हूँ।	
9	यह एक बड़ा शहर है।	
10	भारत की राजधानी दिल्ली है।	

Test Yourself



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1312#h5p-50>

Please read the following conversation and click on the question words.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1312#h5p-134>

Please match the followings

--



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1312#h5p-135>

Please choose the correct response of the following prompts



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1312#h5p-136>

धन्यवाद !

3.9 Cultural Notes and Extra/ Optional Online Materials



Cultural Notes

	Topic	Explanation
1.	श्री and श्रीमती	In Hindi we use श्री <i>shree</i> for Mr, and श्रीमती <i>shreematii</i> for Mrs. For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • श्री पंकज सहि – Mr. Pankaj Singh. • श्रीमती पूजा सहि – Mrs. Puja Singh
2	Family	Traditionally in India, a family consists of दादा-दादी Grand-parents), माँ-पति (parents), भाई-बहन (brother-sister), चाचा-चाची (uncle-aunt), बूआ (father's sister), चचेरे भाई-बहन (cousins).
3	Decision making	Traditionally in India, male members of the family make all the decisions. However, as women are becoming more empowered, it is not unusual to see their participation in decision making these days.
4	After marriage	After marriage, bride goes to groom's family. She has to stay with his family. It is considered bad if bride demands to live separately specially in the same village/city.
5	You gained weight.	“You gained weight” is considered an insult in America. But, it can be considered as a compliment in India. It simply means that you have been eating well and taking care of yourself. It is also a sign of your financial well-being.

Extra/Optional Online Materials

- [List of Adjectives](#)
- [Rathore Family – Introduction](#)
- [Rajawat Family – Introduction](#)
- [Pareek Family – Introduction](#)
- [Friendship](#)

धन्यवाद!

CHAPTER 4: DESCRIBING PLACES



“India Gate” by Partha_Chowdhury is licensed under CC BY-NC 2.0.

Goals of the Chapter

- In this chapter, You will learn vocabulary related to home, room and city/town.
- In this chapter you will learn how to describe places such as home, room, city/town, school, market, etc.
- In this chapter, you will learn about Hindi Post-positions.
- In this chapter, you will learn about Oblique case in Hindi.
- In this chapter, you will learn about “There construction” in Hindi and how to use it to describe places.
- In this chapter, you will also learn about some cultural aspects of home, town, and space in

India and South Asia.

धन्यवाद !

4.1 Review Concepts from Chapter 3



Vocabulary

Please match the following and then form a sentence with each word describing your family. Please write/record your sentences.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=841#h5p-53>

Speaking

Please audio-record your sentences here



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=841#h5p-54>

Grammar Review



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=841#h5p-55>

Reading and Listening Comprehension

Please read/listen to the following text.

नमस्ते,

मेरा नाम मोहन है। मैं घर का सबसे बड़ा बेटा हूँ। मेरे पिता जी की उम्र पचास साल है। मेरी माँ उनचास साल की है। मेरा छोटा भाई बीस साल का है, और मेरी बहन अठारह साल की है। मेरा छोटा भाई छे फूट का है, मेरे पिता जी पांच फूट आठ इंच के हैं, और मैं पांच फूट पांच इंच का हूँ। मेरी माँ और बहन दोनों पांच फूट चार इंच की हैं। मेरे घर में, सबसे सुन्दर मेरी बहन हैं। मेरा भाई सबसे होशियार है। मेरे पिता जी सबसे मजबूत हैं। मैं सबसे मेहनती हूँ। मेरी माँ सबसे धार्मिक हैं। मेरी बहन मुझ से ज्यादा धार्मिक हैं। यह मेरा छोटा परिवार है। धन्यवाद !

Listening

मोहन का परिवार

Comprehension Test

Please respond to the following questions in Hindi.

	Hindi	English	Your response
1	मोहन के परिवार में, सबसे बड़ा बेटा कौन है?	In Mohan's family, who is the eldest son?	
2	उम्र में, सबसे बड़ा कौन है?	In age, who is the oldest?	
3	परिवार में, सबसे लंबा कौन है?	In family, who is the tallest?	
4	परिवार में, सबसे सुन्दर कौन है?	In family, who is the most beautiful?	
5	परिवार में, सबसे मजबूत कौन है?	In family, who is the strongest?	
6	परिवार में, सबसे मेहनती कौन है?	In family, who is the most hard-working?	
7	परिवार में, सबसे होशियार कौन है?	In family, who is the most intelligent?	
8	परिवार में, सबसे धार्मिक कौन है?	In family, who is the most religious?	
9	परिवार में, मोहन से ज्यादा धार्मिक कौन है?	In family, who is more religious than Mohan ?	

धन्यवाद !

4.2 Reading/Listening 1: ऋतिक का घर



ऋतिक का घर “Hritik’s Home”



“Kerala Ayurveda Homestay, Travel Ashtamudi” by peterwurst44 is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.

Vocabulary



"Peeled door" by =Nahemoth= (absent for a while) is licensed under CC BY 2.0.

दरवाजा *n.m.* door



"Living room" by h-squared is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.

बैठक *n.f.* Living room



"Indian Kitchen" by Stephanie Booth is licensed under CC BY-NC-SA 2.0.

रसोई *n.f.* Kitchen



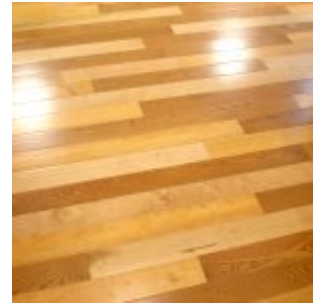
"Hotel Monaco" by delgaudm is licensed under CC BY 2.0.

गलियारा *n.m.* Corridor/Hallway



"My desk" by polymath blues is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0.

पढ़ाई का कमरा *n.m.* Study room



"Multi-Color Hardwood Flooring" by merfam is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0.

फर्श *n.m.* Floor



"Staircase" by Vince Alongi is licensed under CC BY 2.0.

सीढ़ी *n.f.* Staircase









"Urban Bedroom" by Houseology is licensed under CC BY-NC 2.0.

सोने का कमरा *n.m.* Bedroom



"Girl in Window, Bharuch India" by AdamCohn is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0.

खड़की *n.f.* Window

 <p>"Roof tiles" by elias_daniel is licensed under CC BY 2.0.</p>	 <p>"Boy Watching From Balcony, Kanpur India" by AdamCohn is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0.</p>	 <p>"garden" by etcher67 is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0.</p>
छत <i>n.f.</i> Roof	छज्जा <i>n.m.</i> Balcony	वगीचा <i>n.m.</i> Garden
 <p>"Clean Indian Toilet" by Stephanie Booth is licensed under CC BY-NC-SA 2.0.</p>	 <p>"Indian shower" by .waldec is licensed under CC BY 2.0.</p>	 <p>"dinning room of 306 Myrtle Lane" by nannetteturner is licensed under CC BY 2.0.</p>
शौचालय <i>n.m.</i> Toilet	स्नानघर <i>n.m.</i> Shower/Bathroom	भोजन कक्ष (खाने का कमरा) <i>n.m.</i> dinning room

Test Yourself



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=847#h5p-56>

Reading/Listening

Context: Vidya is visiting Hritik's home first time. Hritik is giving Vidya a tour of his home.

Pre-reading activities:

(a) Please collect photos of the several parts of your home and then on the back of your each photo, please write its name in Hindi. It should look like a flash-card but with photos.

(b) Please think about your home and your friends' home and make a list of the parts of home that their homes have and your home does not have and vice-versa.

Reading

	Hindi	English
	दरवाजे की घंटी बजती है और ऋतिक दरवाजा खोलता है।	Door-bell rings and Hritik opens the door.
ऋतिक:	ओ हो ! वदिया है। नमस्ते, क्या हाल है?	Oho! It is Vidya. Hello, how are you?
वदिया:	नमस्ते, सब ठीक है। तुम कैसे हो?	Hello, All is well. How are you?
ऋतिक:	मैं भी ठीक हूँ। आओ, अन्दर आओ।	I am okay too. come, come inside.
वदिया:	धन्यवाद, तुम्हारा घर बहुत सुन्दर है।	Thanks, your home is very beautiful.
ऋतिक:	शुक्रिया, चलो, मैं तुम्हें पूरा घर दिखाता हूँ।	Thanks, Let's go, I will show you my whole house.
वदिया:	ठीक है, चलो।	Okay, Let's go.
ऋतिक:	यह हमारे घर का दरवाजा है। उसके बाद एक गलियारा है। गलियारे के बाद एक और दरवाजा है। उस दरवाजे के बाद, हमारी बैठक है। बैठक के बायीं तरफ हमारी रसोई, और खाने का कमरा है। बैठक के दायीं तरफ, पढ़ने का कमरा, पूजा घर, और अतिथि का कमरा भी है। बैठक में ही, एक सीढ़ी है।	This is the door of our house. After that there is a corridor. After the corridor, there is another door. After that door, there is our living room. On the left side of the living room, there is our kitchen and dinning room. On the right side of the living room, there is a study room, worship room, and a guest room too. In the living room itself, there is a staircase.
वदिया:	और ऊपर की मंजलि पर क्या-क्या है?	And what are there on the top floor?
ऋतिक:	ऊपर की मंजलि पर, तीन सोने के कमरे हैं। हर कमरे में, एक-एक शौचालय और स्नानघर है। ऊपर की मंजलि पर, एक छज्जा भी है।	On the top floor, there are three bedrooms. In each room, there is a toilet and shower. There is a balcony too on the top floor.
वदिया:	क्या नीचे की मंजलि पर कोई शौचालय नहीं है?	Is there no toilet on the bottom floor?
ऋतिक:	हाँ, एक शौचालय और स्नानघर नीचे की मंजलि पर भी है।	Yes, There is one toilet and shower at the bottom floor too.
वदिया:	ऋतिक, तुम्हारा घर बहुत अच्छा, साफ और हवादार भी है। क्या तुम्हारे घर में कोई बगीचा है?	Hritik, your house is very good, clean and airy too. Is there any garden in your house?
ऋतिक:	घर के पीछे, एक छोटा सा बगीचा भी है। वह मेरी माँ की सबसे पसंदीदा जगह है।	Behind the house, there is a small garden. This is my mother's favorite place.
वदिया:	अरे वाह ! मुझे भी बगीचा बहुत पसंद है। और तुम्हारा कमरा कहाँ है?	O wao! I, too, like garden a lot. And where is your room?
ऋतिक:	मेरा कमरा ऊपर की मंजलि पर है। मेरा कमरा अभी गंदा है। मैं तुम्हें अपना कमरा बाद में दिखाऊंगा।	My room is on the top floor. Right now, my room is dirty. I will show you my room later.
वदिया:	ठीक है।	Okay.

Listening

ऋतिक का घर

True-False:



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=847#h5p-57>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=847#h5p-58>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=847#h5p-59>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=847#h5p-60>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=847#h5p-61>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=847#h5p-62>

Drawing: Based on the above description of Hritik's house, please draw a picture of the bottom floor of Hritik's house.

Writing/Speaking

As you read how Hritik gave tour of his house to Vidya. Now, it is your turn to describe your home in 15-20 sentences. Please write them on the paper first and then audio-record yourself.

Alternatively, you can also video-record describing your home.

Record yourself here:





An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=847#h5p-63>

धन्यवाद!

4.3 Reading/Listening 2: ऋतिक का कमरा



ऋतिक का कमरा “Hritik’s Room”



Bedroom

Vocabulary



"Tie Rug, full frontal" by eileenaway is licensed under CC BY-NC-SA 2.0.



"Dreams divan beds" by Dreams Beds and Mattresses is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0.



"Rym's old chair" by Apreche is licensed under CC BY 2.0.

दरी *n.f.* Rug

बस्तिर *n.m.* Bed

कुरसी *n.f.* Chair



"li9015-antique-chinese-altar-console-table" by Silk Road Collection is licensed under CC BY-NC-SA 2.0.



"Lido Sofa, 84' version, upholstered" by DesignFolly.com is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.

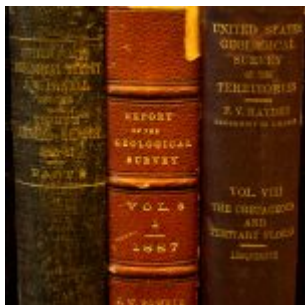


"IMG_5184.JPG" by pixxietails is licensed under CC BY 2.0.

मेज *n.f.* Table

सोफ़ा *n.m.* Sofa

अलमारी *n.f.* Wardrobe







"Books" by Kamal H. is licensed under CC BY-ND 2.0.



"pregnant onion plant" by jelene is licensed under CC BY 2.0.



"A Photo in Frame Showing Lovers Boating under Willows in the Lake in Central Park (New York, NY)" by Elephant Smith is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0.

<p>क़िताब <i>n.f.</i> Book</p>  <p>"Curtains!" by Apreche is licensed under CC BY 2.0.</p>	<p>पौधा <i>n.m.</i> Plant</p>  <p>"Light Bulb" by derekskey is licensed under CC BY 2.0.</p>	<p>तस्वीर <i>n.f.</i> Picture</p>  <p>"Ceiling Fan" by jeffk is licensed under CC BY 2.0.</p>
<p>परदा <i>n.m.</i> Curtain</p>  <p>"Bottle Vase (Yuhuchun) LACMA M.88.63" by Fæ is licensed under CC BY 2.0.</p>	<p>बत्ती <i>n.f.</i> Light bulb</p>  <p>"Clocks for Den" by robstephaustralia is licensed under CC BY 2.0.</p>	<p>पंखा <i>n.m.</i> Fan</p>  <p>"Dressing Mirror" by Bernie Goldbach is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.</p>
<p>फूलदान/ ग़लुदस्ता <i>n.m.</i> Flower vase</p>	<p>घड़ी <i>n.f.</i> clock/watch</p>	<p>आईना <i>n.f.</i> Mirror</p>

Test Yourself



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=851#h5p-64>

Reading/Listening

Context: Vidya comes back to Hritik's home. This time, Hritik is showing her his room.

Pre-Reading Activities

Please collect photos of the several things in your room, then on the back of your each photo, please write its name in Hindi. It should look like a flash-card but with photos.

Reading

	Hindi	English
ऋतिक:	आओ वदिया, आज, मैं तुम्हें अपना कमरा दिखाता हूँ।	Come Vidya, today, I show you my room.
वदिया:	चलो।	Let's go.
ऋतिक:	यह मेरा कमरा है। मेरे कमरे में, एक बिस्तर है, एक मेज, एक कुर्सी और एक छोटा सोफा भी है। बिस्तर के बगल में एक छोटी मेज है। उस मेज पर, एक बजिली की बत्ती, एक फूलदान और एक घड़ी भी है।	This is my room. In my room, there is one bed, one table, one chair, and one small sofa too. On that table, there is an electric bulb, a flower vase, and one clock too.
वदिया:	पढ़ाई की मेज पर, क्या है?	What are on the study table?
ऋतिक:	पढ़ाई की मेज पर, एक कंप्यूटर, कुछ किताबें और एक कॉफी कप है।	On the study table, there is a computer, a few books, and a coffee cup.
वदिया:	इस अलमारी में क्या है?	What is in this almirah?
ऋतिक:	इस अलमारी में, मेरे कपड़े और जूते हैं। देखो, उस दीवार पर सुन्दर तस्वीरें हैं। दरवाजे के पीछे एक आईना भी है।	In this almirah, there are my clothes and shoes. Look, there are beautiful pictures on that wall. There is a mirror behind the door too.
वदिया:	तुम्हारे कमरे का परदा बहुत सुन्दर है। और लगता है कि पंखा नया है।	The curtain of your room is very beautiful. It seems that fan is new.
ऋतिक:	जी हाँ, नया पंखा और नयी दरी भी।	Yes, New fan and new rug too.
वदिया:	तुम्हारा कमरा बहुत बड़ा और हवादार भी है।	Your room is very big and airy too.
ऋतिक:	धन्यवाद! क्या तुम भी मुझे अपना कमरा और घर दिखाओगी?	Thanks! Will you also show me your room and house?
वदिया:	हाँ, जरूर, क्यों नहीं?	Yes, indeed, why not?

Listening

ऋतिक का कमरा

Activity

Please make a list of at least 10 things of Hritik's room and then of your room.

	ऋतिक के कमरे में,	मरे कमरे में,
1		
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		
7		
8		
9		
10		

Drawing: Based on the above description of Hritik's room, please draw a picture Hritik's room.

Writing/Speaking

As you read how Hritik gave a description of his room to Vidya. Now, it is your turn to describe your room in 10-15 sentences. Please write them on the paper first and then audio-record yourself. Alternatively, you can also video-record describing your room.

Record yourself here:



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basic hindi/?p=851#h5p-65>

धन्यवाद !

4.4 Reading/Listening 2: पीटर का शहर



पीटर का शहर “Peter’s Hometown”



Dar es Salaam city at dawn

Vocabulary



"Road" by sgorford is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.



"Moottoritie — Highway" by dotsi is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0.



"100-01 The Ribble side of Preston Bus Station" by Sou'wester is licensed under CC BY-NC 2.0.

सड़क *n.f.* Road

राजमार्ग *n.m.* Highway

बस अड्डा *n.m.* Bus station



"Balham Station IMG_1297" by StefanSzczelkun is licensed under CC BY-NC-SA 2.0.



"Planes on the apron at Heathrow Terminal 3" by David Jones is licensed under CC BY 2.0.



"River Seridó" by grungepunk2010 is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.

रेलवे स्टेशन *n.m.* Railway station

हवाई अड्डा *n.m.* Airport

नदी *n.f.* River



"A Summer Pond" by enneafive is licensed under CC BY 2.0.



"Lake Michigan" by VV Nincic is licensed under CC BY 2.0.



"mountain" by barnyz is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0.

तालाब *n.m.* Pond

झील *n.f.* Lake

पहाड़ *n.m.* Mountain



"Cinema Hall Sector 22 Chandigarh" by personne.de.chandigarh is licensed under CC BY-NC-SA 2.0.



"State Bank of India SBI" by joegoauk73 is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.



"Michigan State University — Spartan Stadium" by Tony Faiola is licensed under CC BY 2.0.

सिनेमा घर *n.m.* Cinema hall

बैंक *n.m.* Bank

मैदान *n.m.* Sports field



"Vegetable Market — IMG 0332 ep" by Eric.Parker is licensed under CC BY-NC 2.0.



"Shopping, Madurai, India" by Fabionik is licensed under CC BY-NC-SA 2.0.



"Amanda at Ananda Vegetarian restaurant Little India Singapore" by amanderson2 is licensed under CC BY 2.0.

बाज़ार *n.m.* Market

दुकान *n.f.* Shop

भोजनालय *n.m.* Restaurant



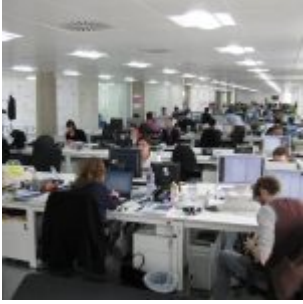








"Hotel Miramar 2" by Son of Groucho is licensed under CC BY 2.0.



"Chicago II - McGraw-Hill Building - Conrad Chicago Hotel Now #1" by Onasill - Bill — 73M is licensed under CC BY-NC-SA 2.0.



"Beck in Hospital." by Rebecca and Bernhard is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0.

<p>होटल n.m. Hotel</p>  <p>"New office" by Phillie Casablanca is licensed under CC BY 2.0.</p>	<p>भवन n.m./इमारत n.f. Building</p>  <p>"An old postoffice in Goa..." by 2 million+ views. Humbled and thanks! is licensed under CC BY 2.0.</p>	<p>अस्पताल n.m. Hospital</p>  <p>"Indian Police (2)" by rustejunk is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0.</p>
<p>कार्यालय n.m. Office</p>  <p>"Lincoln Park Zoo in Chicago" by Mike Boudreaux01 is licensed under CC BY-NC-SA 2.0.</p>	<p>डाकघर n.m. Post office</p>  <p>"Library Shelves" by James F Clay is licensed under CC BY-NC 2.0.</p>	<p>पुलिस थाना n.m. Police station</p>  <p>"Art Museum in Chicago" by apete is licensed under CC BY-NC-SA 2.0.</p>
<p>चड़ियाघर n.m. Zoo</p>  <p>"Bridge Street Bridge (Portland, Michigan)" by cmh2315fl is licensed under CC BY-NC 2.0.</p>	<p>पुस्तकालय n.m. Library</p>  <p>"Forum Value Mall" by criatvt is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0.</p>	<p>संग्रहालय n.m. Museum</p>  <p>"Peggy R. McConnell Arts Center of Worthington in 93-year-old high school building" by dok1 is licensed under CC BY 2.0.</p>

पुल n.m. Bridge	मॉल n.m. Shopping mall	स्कूल/ वदियालय n.m. School
 <p>"Welcome to Michigan State University, East Lansing, Michigan" by Ken Lund is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.</p>	 <p>"College" by Jeheme is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0.</p>	 <p>"Shell Gas Station" by JeepersMedia is licensed under CC BY 2.0.</p>
वश्ववदियालय n.m. University	कॉलजे/महावदियालय n.m. College	पट्रोल पम्प n.m. Gas station

Test Yourself



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=853#h5p-66>

Reading/Listening

Context: Hritik is talking to Peter about his home town "Iowa City."

Pre-Reading Activities

Please read the following word, then write their meaning in English. After that please respond to the prompts.

	Hindi	English	Do you have this in your town/city	How many
I	बुदुधलडु	School	ऑु हलू	5
2	डुहलबुदुधलडु			
3	बुशुवुवुदुधलडु			
4	असुडतलल			
5	डलकघर			
6	डुलुसल थलनल			
7	सगुरुहललडु			
8	नदुी			
9	ऑुील			
10	तलललब			
11	डुहलडु			
12	डुसुतकललडु			

Reading

	Hindi	English
पीटर:	ऋतिक भाई, आप कहाँ से हैं?	Brother Hritik, where are you from?
ऋतिक:	मैं पटना, हिन्दुस्तान से हूँ। आप कहाँ से हैं?	I am from Patna, India. Where are you from?
पीटर:	मैं आयोवा के एक छोटे शहर आयोवा सटी से हूँ। पटना, बिहार की राजधानी है, न?	I am from a small town Iowa City, Iowa. Patna is the capital of Bihar, isn't it?
ऋतिक:	जी हाँ, मैं बिहारी हूँ। आयोवा सटी की जनसंख्या कितनी है?	Yes, I am a Bihari. What is the population of Iowa City?
पीटर:	आयोवा सटी में लगभग पचहतर हजार लोग रहते हैं। और पटना में?	Approx 75 thousand people live in Iowa City. And in Patna?
ऋतिक:	पटना में लगभग, पच्चीस लाख लोग रहते हैं। शायद, आयोवा सटी बहुत छोटा शहर है।	Approx, 2.5 million people live in Patna. Perhaps, Iowa City is a very small town.
पीटर:	हाँ, आयोवा सटी बहुत छोटा, मगर बहुत प्यारा शहर है।	Yes, Iowa City is very small, but very lovely town.
ऋतिक:	क्या वहाँ कोई हवाई अड्डा है?	Is there any airport there?
पीटर:	नहीं, मगर पास के शहर सीडर रैपडिस में एक हवाई अड्डा है। आयोवा सटी में रेलवे स्टेशन भी नहीं है। हाँ, एक बस स्टेशन है।	No, but there is an airport in near by town. Even railway station is not there in Iowa City. There is just one bus station.
ऋतिक:	आयोवा सटी में, कितने बाल्यालय, महाबाल्यालय, और विश्वबाल्यालय हैं।	How many schools, colleges, and universities are there in Iowa City?
पीटर:	मेरे शहर में, दो बाल्यालय, एक महाबाल्यालय, और एक विश्वबाल्यालय है।	In my town, there are two schools, one college, and one university.
ऋतिक:	क्या आपके शहर में पुस्तकालय, संग्रहालय, सनिमा घर, और चडियाघर हैं?	Is there any library, museum, cinema hall and zoo in your town?
पीटर:	जी हाँ, मेरे शहर में, दो पुस्तकालय, एक संग्रहालय, एक सनिमाघर भी है। मगर चडियाघर नहीं है।	Yes, in my town, there are two libraries, one museum, one cinema hall. But, there is no zoo.
ऋतिक:	अच्छा, क्या आयोवा सटी में, कोई नदी, झील, तालाब और पहाड़ हैं।	Okay, Is there any river, lake, pond and mountain in Iowa City?
पीटर:	मेरे शहर में, एक नदी, और कुछ तालाब हैं। वहाँ पहाड़ नहीं है। आयोवा एक कृषि प्रधान राज्य है और वहाँ बहुत समतल जमीन और खेत हैं।	In my town, there is a river and a few ponds. There is no mountain there. Iowa is an agriculture based state and there is a lot of even and farm land.
ऋतिक:	क्या आपके शहर में, डाकघर, और पुलिस थाना आदि हैं?	In your town, is there a post office, and a police station, etc?
पीटर:	जी हाँ, मेरे शहर में एक डाक घर, और एक पुलिस थाना भी है। पटना में क्या-क्या है?	Yes, In my town, there is one post office, and one police station too. What are there in Patna?
ऋतिक:	पटना के बारे में, हम बाद में बात करें। अब क्लास का समय है।	Let's talk about Patna later. Now, it is time for class.
पीटर:	ठीक है, कोई बात नहीं।	Okay, No problem.

Listening

पीटर का शहर

Activities

- (a) Please write 10-15 sentences describing your own home town.
 (b) Based on above conversation, please write 10 sentences in Hindi describing Iowa City.
 (c) Imagine that you are Peter. You are planning to ask Hritik at least 10 questions about Patna in Hindi. Please make a list of your questions.

	पटना के बारे में सवाल "Questions about Patna"
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	

- (d) After gathering the information either from any friend from Patna/India or internet, please write 10-15 sentences about Patna. After writing, please audio-record yourself here.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basic hindi/?p=853#h5p-67>

धन्यवाद !

4.5 Study Abroad



Study Abroad Reading/Listening Activity



“New York Skyline” by Crisologo is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0.

Reading

Context: In chapter 3. You read a letter from Sita (Jen’s host mother from India) to Jen in which she describes her family. In this chapter, Jen is writing a letter back to Sita describing her family and her city.

प्रिय मेज़बान माँ,
नमस्ते!

आपकी चिट्ठी मली। आपके परिवार के बारे में जानकर बहुत खुशी हुई। इस पत्र में, मैं आपको अपने परिवार और शहर के बारे में बताऊँगी। मेरा एक छोटा परिवार है और हम सब न्यू यॉर्क शहर में रहते हैं। मेरा एक छोटा भाई है। वह एक सरकारी विद्यालय में पढ़ता है। मेरे पिता जी और माँ दोनों विश्वविद्यालय में पढ़ाते हैं। मेरी एक पालतू बिल्ली भी है। उसका नाम गोरी है। 😊

न्यू यॉर्क एक बहुत बड़ा शहर है। यह अमेरिका की आर्थिक राजधानी है। इस शहर में बहुत सारे सरकारी और गैर-सरकारी कार्यालय हैं। यहाँ दो बड़े विश्वविद्यालय और कई महाविद्यालय, और विद्यालय हैं। इस शहर में, दुनिया के हर देश के लोग रहते हैं। यहाँ बहुत हिन्दुस्तानी लोग भी हैं। न्यू यॉर्क में, एक नदी है। यहाँ किसी भी बड़े शहर की तरह, हर चीज है मगर प्राकृतिक सुन्दरता ज़्यादा नहीं है। मैं अगले हफ्ते भारत आ रही हूँ। जब हम मिलेंगे तब मैं आपको अपने शहर के बारे में और भी बताऊँगी।

आपकी बटी,
जेन

Listening

जेन का पत्र

Activities

(a) Make a sentence with each word given below.

	Hindi	English	Sentence
1	मजदूर <i>n.m.</i>	Host	
2	चिट्ठी <i>n.f.</i>	Letter	
3	दोनों <i>adj.</i>	Both	
4	सरकारी <i>adj.</i>	Governmental	
5	शहर <i>n.m.</i>	Town	

(b) Click on all the post-positions in the text below. (Look at the grammar section before doing this activity)



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1190#h5p-68>

धन्यवाद !

4.6 Post-positions



Post-Positions Video

Instructor Video: [Post-positions](#)

English has a class of words called “prepositions”. Prepositions are the words that precede a phrase and indicate a relationship between the phrase and another word in the sentence. Hindi has a similar class of words known as “post-positions”. As the name implies, post-positions come after the word they modify. In other respects, however, they are very similar to prepositions in English.

Simple Post-positions

Simple post-positions consist of a single word.

Examples

Post-position	English	Examples	
		Hindi	English
में	in	मेरे शहर में	In my town
पर	on,	मेज़ पर	On a table
	at	घर पर	At home
से	from	भारत से	from India
	by	ट्रेन से	by train
	with	कलम से	with a pen
	since	बचपन से	since childhood
का/की/ के	's	सोने का कमरा घर की खड़की घर के लोग	bed room House's window (window of a house) House's people (people of a house)
को	to	लड़के को आप को	to a boy to you

Compound Post-positions

Hindi has many compound post-positions as well. Compound post-positions consist of two or more words. Most compound post-positions begin with the post-position के, की, or से.

Examples

Post-position	English	Examples	
		Hindi	English
x के लिये	for x	घर के लिये	For house
x के बारे में	about x	शहर के बारे में	About town
x की वजह से / के कारण	because of x	आप की वजह से / के कारण	Because of you
x से दूर	far from x	घर से दूर	far from home
x के नजदीक / पास	near x	घर के नजदीक / पास	near home
x से / के पहले	before x	स्कूल से / के पहले	before school
x के बाहर	outside x	घर के बाहर	outside home
x के अंदर	inside the x	घर के अंदर	inside the home
x के बाद	after x	स्कूल के बाद	after school
x के ऊपर	above/ on/ on top of x	घर के ऊपर	above/ on/ on top of home
x के नीचे	under/ beneath/ below x	छत के नीचे	under/ beneath/ below roof
x की तरफ	towards x	आप की तरफ	towards you
x के सामने	in front of x	आप के सामने	in front of you
x के पीछे	behind x	आप के पीछे	behind you
x के आगे	ahead of x	आप के आगे	ahead of you
x के साथ	together with/ with/ along with x	आप के साथ	together with/ with/ along with you
x और y के बीच	between x and y	स्कूल और घर के बीच	between school and home

Test yourself



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basic hindi/?p=855#h5p-69>

Fill in the blanks with suitable post-position.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=855#h5p-70>

धन्यवाद !

4.7 Oblique Case



Oblique Case Video

Instructor Video: [Oblique Case](#)

Case is a property of a word which indicates its uses within a phrase or a sentence. In Hindi, based on form, there are two types of case: (a) Direct case, and (b) Oblique case.

(a) Direct Case: The direct case is used with a nominal phrase which is not followed by a post-position.

(b) Oblique Case: The oblique case is used with a nominal phrase which is followed by a post-position.

Nouns, pronouns, adjectives and verbs change in oblique case form when followed by a post-position.

Note: Please note that when a nouns, pronouns, adjectives and verbs are in oblique case form, they do not change their meanings. It is just a grammatical form which has nothing to do with the meaning of those words. This is why, typically, Hindi learners struggle to acquire this very crucial but meaningless feature of Hindi language.

Oblique Noun

Masculine Singular Oblique Nouns

Only singular masculine nouns that ends in आ changes into ए in oblique case form. Others (singular masculine that does not end in आ and singular feminine) do not change.

For Examples:

- लड़का — लड़के का नाम “boy’s name.” (आ changes into ए)
- आदमी — आदमी का नाम “man’s name” (No change)

Feminine Singular Oblique Nouns

When a feminine singular noun is followed by any post-position, it does not change its form.

For Examples:

- लड़की — लड़की का नाम “girl’s name” (No change)

- कतिाब — कतिाब का नाम “Book’s name” (No change)

Plural Oblique Nouns

All plural nouns (masculine and feminine) change into ओं or यों in their oblique case forms.

For Examples:

- लडके — लडकों के नाम “Boys’ names”
- शहर — शहरों के नाम “Cities’ names”
- लडकियाँ — लडकियों के नाम “Girls’ names”
- कतिाबें — कतिाबों के नाम “books’ name”

Oblique Nouns Summary

	Masculine		Feminine	
Singular	Type I	Type II	Type I	Type II
	-आ changes in -ए	No change	No change	No change
	लडका – लडके का कमरा – कमरे में	घर -घर का मकान – मकान में	लडकी – लडकी को खड्की – खड्की पर	कतिाब – कतिाब में मेज़ – मेज़ पर
Plural	Type I	Type II	Type I	Type II
	All masculine and feminine plural nouns change into ओं or यों			
	लडके – लडकों को कमरे – कमरों में	घर -घरों का मकान – मकानों में	लडकियाँ – लडकियों को खड्कियाँ – खड्कियों पर	कतिाबें – कतिाबों में मेज़ें – मेज़ों पर

Oblique Adjectives

As we know Hindi adjectives can be classified into marked and unmarked adjectives.

Marked adjective (that ends in आ) changes in ए for oblique adjective form.

For Examples:

- अच्छा – अच्छा लडका — अच्छे लडके का नाम “good boy’s name”
- मीठा — मीठा फल — मीठे फलों में “In sweet fruits”

Unmarked adjective (that does not end in आ) does not change in oblique adjective form.

For Examples:

- सुन्दर — सुन्दर लडकी — सुन्दर लडकी का नाम “beautiful girl’s name” (No change)
- हवादार — हवादार कमरा — हवादार कमरे में “In a airy room” (No change)

Summary of Oblique Adjectives

	Oblique Adjectives	
	Marked	Unmarked
Rules	-आ changes in -ए	No change
Examples	अच्छा – अच्छा लड़का – अच्छे लड़के का मीठा – मीठा फल – मीठे फलों में	सुन्दर – सुन्दर लड़की – सुन्दर लड़की का नाम हवादार – हवादार कमरा – हवादार कमरे में

Oblique Verbs

We will learn more about verb in the next chapters (5 and 6). Here, please know that all the verbs in Hindi end in -आ, to be specific -ना.

For examples:

- खाना “To eat”
- पढ़ना “To read”
- सोना “To sleep”

Rule to change direct verb in oblique verb: -आ changes in -ए

For Examples:

- खाना “to eat” – खाने के लिए “in order to eat/ to eat.”
- पढ़ना “to read” – पढ़ने से “by reading.”
- सोना “to sleep” – सोने से पहले “before sleeping.”

Oblique Pronouns

Hindi pronouns also change into oblique form when followed by a post-position.

Pronouns in English	Pronouns in Hindi		Examples of pronouns with post-position	
	Direct	Oblique	Pronouns + को	Pronouns + से
I	मैं	मझ	मझो / मझको	मझ से
We	हम	हम	हमो / हमको	हम से
You	तू	तझ	तझो / तझको	तझ से
You	तुम	तुम	तुमहो / तुमको	तुम से
You	आप	आप	आपको	आप से
S/he (near)	यह	इस	इसको	इससे
S/he (far)	वह	उस	उसको	उससे
They (near)	ये	इन	इनको	इनसे
They (far)	वे	उन	उनको	उनसे
Who (Sing.)	कौन	कसि	कसिको	कसिसे
Who (Plu.)	कौन	कनि	कनिको	कनिसे
What (Sing.)	क्या	कसि	कसिको	कसिसे
What (Plu.)	क्या	कनि	कनिको	कनिसे

Test Yourself



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1200#h5p-71>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1200#h5p-72>

धन्यवाद !

4.8 "There" Construction



“There” Construction Video

Instructor Video: [There Construction](#)

English is not a pro-drop language, in other words, you cannot have an English sentence in which subject is not available. This's why, we need dummy subjects like ‘there’ and ‘it’ in English.

For examples:

- There is a car.
- There are ten students.

Unlike English though, Hindi is a pro-drop language hence subject can be dropped, or it is not needed in ‘there’ or ‘it’ sentences. In these sentences, the verb agrees with the object.

For Examples:

1.	English	In my town, there is a museum.
	Hindi Word order	My town in + (there) + a museum + is
	Hindi	मरे शहर में () एक संग्रहालय है।
2.	English	In my room, there are ten books.
	Hindi Word order	My room in + (there) + ten books + are
	Hindi	मरे कमरे में () दस किताबें हैं।
3.	English	There is a computer on my desk.
	Hindi Word order	My desk on + (there) + a computer + is
	Hindi	मेरी मेज़ पर () एक कंप्यूटर है।

Activities

With “there construction,” please form five sentences for describing places given below.

Place		Sentences
मेरी रसोई में, In my kitchen,	1	Example: मेरी रसोई में एक चूल्हा है "There is a stove in my kitchen."
	2	
	3	
	4	
	5	
मेरी बैठक में, In my living room,	1	
	2	
	3	
	4	
	5	
मेरे थैले में, In my bag,	1	
	2	
	3	
	4	
	5	
मेरे स्कूल में, In my school,	1	
	2	
	3	
	4	
	5	

धन्यवाद!

4.9 Cultural Notes and Extra/ Optional Online Materials



Cultural Notes

	Topics	Explanation
1	Indian City/Town	Typically, Indian and South Asian cities and towns are very crowded and houses do not have front and back lawns. Indian villages have comparatively more open space. Indian is the 2nd largest populated country of the world with very dense population.
2	Transportation	Public transportation is easily available in India and South Asian cities. Though, all the buses, trains and airports are very crowded and can be intimidating for someone new.
3	Private space	Given that Indian family up to three generation live in one house, there is not much private/personal space.
4	Bathroom/Toilet	In a typical Indian houses, bathroom and toilet are not in the same room like America. They are built separately. However, in bigger cities, and in apartment complexes, you will find bathroom and toilet in one space. Please also note that Indian toilet is squatting toilet.
5	Worship room	Typically, in bigger Hindu houses in India, there would be a separate room called पूजा घर "worship room."
6	Shoes NOT in the house	Typically, Indians do not allow shoes in the house. Everyone takes off shoes out-side the house in corridor or near the entry door.
7	Kitchen	Indian houses/apartment do not have open kitchen attached with the living room like in American houses/apartments. Indian kitchens are not visible for the guests. As a guest you should ask permission to enter in your host kitchen.
8	Market	In India and South Asia, a smaller markets are everywhere. You can find smaller grocery stores in your own alley. Every neighborhood has all small stores for regularly used things such as: medical stores, grocery, mobile phone stores, vegetable and fruit stores, etc. However, in village area, it not the case so much and typically there is a weekly village market. Villagers also visit near/local town/cities for shopping.

Extra/Optional Online Materials

[Ganeshpura – A village
Jaipur – Introduction](#)

[Pareek family – Our Home](#)

[Rajawat Family – Vegetable Market](#)

[Rajawat Family – Ganesh Temple](#)

[Pareek Family – Kitchen](#)

Thanks! धन्यवाद!

CHAPTER 5: EXPRESSING LIKES, DISLIKES, NEEDS, AND POSSESSION



“Kathakali 1” by RaKra42 is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0.

Goals of this Chapter

- You will learn vocabulary related to situations like in a vegetable market and at a restaurant.
- You will learn how to change sentences in the past tense using verb “to be” in the past.
- You will learn dative subject (subject with -ko) in Hindi.
- You will learn how to express likes.

- You will learn how to express dislikes.
- You will learn how to express needs.
- You will learn how to express possession.

धन्यवाद!

5.1 Review of Chapter 4



Vocabulary



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=867#h5p-73>

Grammar

Please choose the correct option. Please pay extra attention to the oblique forms in Hindi phrases.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=867#h5p-74>

Reading



मेरा स्कूल

मेरे स्कूल का नाम लासिंग हाई स्कूल है। मेरे स्कूल में, लगभग एक सौ कमरे हैं। मेरे स्कूल में, एक बगीचा और दो खेल के मैदान हैं। मेरे स्कूल में एक प्रयोगशाला और एक सभागार भी हैं। मेरे स्कूल में, लगभग बारह सौ छात्र और छात्राएँ हैं। मेरे स्कूल में, लगभग बीस अध्यापक हैं। मेरे प्रधानाचार्य को अनुशासन बहुत पसंद है। स्कूल में, सभी वषिय पढ़ाये जाते हैं। मेरा स्कूल, शहर से दूर है। मैं हर दिन, साइकिल से स्कूल जाता हूँ। आप भी मुझे अपने स्कूल के बारे में बताइयें।
धन्यवाद !

Listening

[Listening Activity](#)

Check Your Comprehension

Based on the above reading and listening, please answer the following questions.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=867#h5p-75>

Speaking



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=867#h5p-76>

धन्यवाद!

5.2 Reading/Listening 1: फल और सब्जी की दुकान पर



फल और सब्जी की दुकान पर



“Fruit & Vege stall” by clara & james is licensed under CC BY-NC-SA 2.0.

Vocabulary

Hindi	Grammatical Categories	English
भइया	<i>n.m</i>	Elder brother; it is also used to address someone who you don't know and older than you.
चाहिए	<i>v.i.</i>	need
x के पास	<i>phrase</i>	X has
कौन-कौन सी	<i>phrase</i>	What all
सब्जी	<i>n.f</i>	Vegetable
आलू	<i>n.m</i>	Potato
प्याज़	<i>n.m</i>	Onion
टमाटर	<i>n.m</i>	Tomato
गोभी	<i>n.f</i>	Cauliflower
मूली	<i>n.f.</i>	Radish
पालक	<i>n.m.</i>	Spinach
करेला	<i>n.m.</i>	Bitter gourd
बैंगन	<i>n.m</i>	Eggplant
मटर	<i>n.m</i>	Pea
माफ़ कीजिये	<i>phrase</i>	Sorry
मगर	<i>conj.</i>	If
आजकल	<i>adv</i>	These days
मौसम	<i>n.m.</i>	Weather
इसलिए	<i>conj</i>	Therefore
कोई बात नहीं	<i>phrase</i>	No worries
कतिने का	<i>phrase</i>	How much
x को लगता है कि	<i>phrase</i>	X feels that
महंगा	<i>adj.</i>	Expensive
बहुत	<i>adv.</i>	Very
दाम	<i>n.m.</i>	Cost
आयात	<i>n.m.</i>	Import
राज्य	<i>n.m.</i>	State
बाज़ार	<i>n.m.</i>	Market
x कहाँ मिलेगा ?	<i>phrase</i>	Where will I get X?
आधा	<i>adj.</i>	Half
फल	<i>n.m.</i>	Fruit
दर्जन	<i>adj.</i>	Dozen

केला	n.m.	Banana
सेब	n.m.	Apple

Test yourself



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=876#h5p-81>

Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

- Please review the vocabulary of fruits and vegetables from previous chapter.
- Please make a list of your favorite fruits and vegetables.
- Please ask your friends about their favorite fruits and vegetable.

Reading

फल और सब्जी की दुकान पर

Context: Vidya is in a market shopping for fruits and vegetables.

वदिया:	नमस्ते भइया	Hello
दुकानदार:	जी नमस्ते, आपको क्या चाहिए ?	Yes, What do you want?
वदिया:	आपके पास कौन-कौन सी सब्जियाँ हैं?	What types of vegetables do you have?
दुकानदार:	मरे पास आलू, टमाटर, प्याज, गोभी, मूली, पालक, और करेला आदि सब्जियाँ हैं।	I have potato, tomato, onion, cauliflower, radish, spinach, and bitter gourd, etc.
वदिया:	मुझे करेला और मूली पसंद नहीं। क्या आपके पास बैंगन और मटर हैं? मुझे मटर बहुत पसंद है।	I do not like bitter-gourd and radish. Do you have eggplant and peas. I like peas a lot.
दुकानदार:	जी हाँ, मरे पास बैंगन हैं। माफ कीजिए, मगर, आजकल, मटर का मौसम नहीं है। इसलिए मरे पास मटर नहीं है।	Yes, I have eggplant. Sorry, but, this is not the season for peas. This is why, I do not have peas.
वदिया:	कोई बात नहीं, बैंगन कतिने का है?	No problem, What is the cost of eggplant?
दुकानदार:	बैंगन 50 रुपये किलो है।	Eggplant is 50 rupees per kilo.
वदिया:	मुझे लगता है कि यह बहुत महंगा है।	I think, it is quite expensive.
दुकानदार:	नहीं जी, दाम एक दम ठीक हैं। क्या आपको मालूम है कि यहाँ बैंगन का आयात हम दूसरे राज्यों से करते हैं?	No, the price is absolutely right. Do you know that we import eggplants from other states?
वदिया:	अच्छा भइया, मुझे मटर, इस बाज़ार में कहाँ मिलेगा ?	Okay brother, where can I get peas in this market?
दुकानदार:	इस बाज़ार में तो आपको मटर कहीं नहीं मिलेगा।	You will not get peas in this market anywhere.
वदिया:	अच्छा कोई बात नहीं। आधा किलो आलू और एक किलो टमाटर दीजिए।	Okay, no problem. Please give me half kilo potato and one kilo tomato.
दुकानदार:	ठीक है। और कुछ ?	Okay. Anything else?
वदिया:	क्या आपके पास फल भी हैं?	Do you have fruits too?
दुकानदार:	जी हाँ, मरे पास सभी मौसमी फल हैं। आपको कौन से फल चाहिए ?	Yes, I have all seasonal fruits. What fruits do you want?
वदिया:	एक दर्जन केले और एक किलो सेब दे दीजिए।	Please give me one dozen banana and one kilo apple.
दुकानदार:	ठीक है। यह लीजिये आधा किलो आलू, एक किलो टमाटर, एक दर्जन केले और एक किलो सेब।	Okay, Please take half kilo potato, one kilo tomato, one dozen banana, and one kilo apple.
वदिया:	कतिना हुआ ?	How much?
दुकानदार:	एक सौ पंद्रह रुपये	115 rupees.
वदिया:	ठीक है. यह लीजिए आपके पैसे, नमस्ते	Okay, please take your money. Bye
दुकानदार:	नमस्ते	Bye.

Listening

Please listen to the above written conversation. [फल और सब्जी की दुकान पर](#)

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Please answer the following Question based on your reading/listening



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basic hindi/?p=876#h5p-82>

(b) Please ask these questions to 3 classmates or friends and find out who have similar likes and dislikes.

प्रश्न	दोस्त १	दोस्त २	दोस्त ३
आपको कौन सा फल पसंद है?			
आपको कौन सी सब्जी पसंद है?			
आपको कौन सा फल नापसंद है?			
आपको कौन सी सब्जी नापसंद है?			
आपको कौन सा शहर पसंद है?			
आपको कौन सी भाषा पसंद है?			
आपको कौन सा त्यौहार पसंद है?			
आपको कौन सा देश पसंद है?			
आपको कौन सा वीडियो गेम पसंद है?			
आपको कौन सी चीज सबसे ज्यादा पसंद है?			

धन्यवाद !



भोजनालय में



“South Indian meal set ‘special’, Kanyakumari, Tamil Nadu, India” by Happy Sleepy is licensed under CC BY-NC-SA 2.0

Vocabulary

Hindi	Grammatical Category	English
आना	<i>v.i.</i>	To come
भोजनालय	<i>n.m.</i>	Restaurant
स्वागत	<i>n.m.</i>	Welcome
बैठना	<i>v.i.</i>	To sit
धन्यवाद	<i>v.m.</i>	Thanks
खड़की	<i>v.f.</i>	Window
x के पास	<i>pp.</i>	Near X
खाली	<i>adj.</i>	Available
x के बाहर	<i>pp.</i>	Outside of X
दृश्य	<i>n.m.</i>	Scene
देखना	<i>v.t.</i>	To see
पसंद करना	<i>v.t.</i>	To like
पानी	<i>n.m.</i>	Water
x के अलावा	<i>pp.</i>	Other than X
लेना	<i>v.t.</i>	To take
हरी	<i>adj.</i>	Green
सब्जी	<i>n.f.</i>	Vegetable
स्वादपिष्ट	<i>adj.</i>	Delicious
x के लिए	<i>pp.</i>	For X

Test yourself



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1183#h5p-83>

Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

- (a) Please make a list of your favorite Indian food.
- (b) After making your own list of favorite Indian food, please ask your friends and try to find out who else has the similar favorite food.
- (c) Please try to find out Indian food menu from any Indian restaurant in your area.

Reading

भोजनालय में

Context: Hrithik and Puja are in an Indian restaurant ordering food.

बैरा:	आइये साहब, इस भोजनालय में आपका स्वागत है, यहाँ बैठिये।	Please come sir, you are welcome in this restaurant, please sit here.
ऋतकि:	धन्यवाद ! खड़की के पास कोई टेबल खाली है ? मुझे बाहर का दृश्य देखना पसंद है।	Thanks! Is there any table available near a window? I like to see outside view.
बैरा:	जी हाँ साहब खाली है, आइये, वहाँ बैठिये।	Yes sir, it is available. Please come sit there.
ऋतकि:	बहुत अच्छा भाई, धन्यवाद !	Very well brother, thanks!
	[बैठने के बाद]	[After sitting]
बैरा:	यह लीजिये पानी और खाने का मनेय (menu)। पानी के अलावा, पीने के लिए आपको क्या चाहिए ?	Here is water and food menu. What else do you want to drink other than water?
ऋतकि:	मुझे आपके यहाँ की शरबत बहुत पसंद है। पूजा, तुम्हें क्या चाहिए ?	I really like your "Sharabat." Puja, what do you want?
पूजा:	मुझे लस्सी चाहिए। मुझे आम की लस्सी बहुत पसंद है।	I want lassii. I really like mango lassii.
	[थोड़ी देर बाद]	[After a while]
बैरा:	साहब, यह लीजिये आपकी शरबत, और मेम साहब, यह रही आपकी आम की लस्सी। आप लोग खाने में क्या-क्या लेंगे ?	Sir, there is your "sharabat," and madam, here is your mango lassii. What do you like in food?
ऋतकि:	मुझे चिकेन करी, दो रोटियाँ, और एक प्लेट चावल चाहिए।	I want chicken curry, two breads, and one plate rice.
पूजा:	मुझे पालक पनीर, और दो रोटियाँ चाहिए।	I want palak paneer, and two breads.
बैरा:	और कुछ ?	Anything else?
पूजा:	जी हाँ, मुझे एक प्लेट हरी सब्जियों का सलाद भी चाहिए।	Yes, I need one plate of green vegetables' salad.
बैरा:	बहुत अच्छा।	Very well.
	[खाना खाने के बाद]	[After eating the food]
बैरा:	क्या आप को खाना पसंद आया ?	Did you like the food?
पूजा:	जी हाँ, खाना बहुत स्वादपिष्ट था।	Yes, it was delicious.
बैरा:	धन्यवाद मेम साहब ! आपको मीठे में क्या चाहिए ?	Thanks madam! What do you like in dessert?
ऋतकि:	मुझे एक कुल्फी चाहिए। और पूजा, तुम्हें क्या चाहिए ?	I like kulfi. And Puja, what do you want?
पूजा:	मुझे भी कुल्फी पसंद है।	I like kulfi too.
बैरा:	बहुत अच्छा साहब। मैं अभी लाता हूँ।	Very well. I will bring that right away.
ऋतकि:	और हाँ भाई, हमें खाने का बिल भी जल्दी चाहिए। हमें फ़िल्म के लिए देर हो रही है।	And yes brother, please bring the bill too. We are getting late for a movie.
बैरा:	बिल्कुल साहब।	Sure sir.
	[थोड़ी देर बाद]	[After a while]
बैरा:	ये लीजिये साहब आपकी कुल्फियाँ और खाने का बिल।	Here is your kulfi and bill.
ऋतकि:	कुल कतिन रूपये का बिल है ?	What is the total amount?
बैरा:	180 रूपये का साहब।	180 rupees, sir.
ऋतकि:	यह लो दो सौ रूपये। 20 रूपये तुम्हारे लिए।	Please take 200 rupees. 20 rupees for you.
बैरा:	बहुत बहुत धन्यवाद साहब।	many many thanks sir.

Listening

Please listen to the above written conversation. [भोजनालय में](#)

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Check your comprehension



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1183#h5p-84>

(b) Based on the above conversation, please prepare an imagined conversation between you and a server at an Indian restaurant.

(c) Please prepare a skit “at a restaurant” with your two other friends.

धन्यवाद !

5.4 Study Abroad



Study Abroad Reading/Listening Activity



Reading

Context: After reaching to India, Jen moved to her host family. Her host mother and Jen are talking about Jen's needs, likes, and dislikes in the following conversation.

कमला:	बेटी जेने, तुम्हारा हमारे घर में स्वागत है। यह तुम्हारा कमरा है।	Daughter Jen, you are most welcome in our home. This is your room.
जेने:	धन्यवाद कमला जी, यह कमरा तो बहुत बड़ा और सुन्दर है।	Thanks Kamala Ji, This room is very big and beautiful.
कमला:	हाँ बेटी, हम यह कमरा हर साल अपने अमेरिकी अतिथि को देते हैं। तुम ठीक से कमरा देख लो और मुझे बताओ कि तुम्हें और कुछ चाहिए।	Yes daughter, We offer this room to our American guest every year. Please look at this room and let me know if you need anything.
जेने:	माता जी, कमरा बहुत अच्छा है। मुझे इन खड़कियों पर पर्दे चाहिए।	Mother, the room is very good. I need curtains on these windows.
कमला:	खड़कियों पर पर्दे हैं। मगर अभी धुलने के लिए उतारे गये हैं।	There are curtains on these windows. But right now they are taken down to be washed.
जेने:	अच्छा। मुझे एक टेबल लैप भी चाहिए।	Great! I also need a table lamp.
कमला:	ठीक है। मैं आज ही एक टेबल लैप तुम्हारे कमरे में लगा दूंगी। तुम्हें और कुछ चाहिए?	Very well. I will get you a table lamp in your room. What else do you need?
जेने:	नहीं और कुछ नहीं। धन्यवाद	Nothing at all. Thanks.
कमला:	अच्छा बेटी, क्या तुम्हें हिन्दी मुत्तानी खाना पसंद है?	Okay daughter, do you like Indian food?
जेने:	जी हाँ, कमला जी, मुझे हिन्दी मुत्तानी खाना बहुत पसंद है।	Yes, Kamala ji, I like Indian food very much.
कमला:	अच्छा। और तुम्हें सुबह-सुबह चाय चाहिए या कॉफी?	Okay. Do you like tea or coffee in the morning?
जेने:	आप लोग क्या पीते हैं?	What do you all drink?
कमला:	हम लोग तो चाय पीते हैं। मगर घर में कॉफी मशीन भी है।	We drink tea. But we have coffee machine in the house too.
जेने:	बहुत अच्छा! मैं आप लोगों के साथ सुबह सुबह चाय पीना चाहती हूँ।	Very well! I would like to drink tea in the morning with you all.
कमला:	बहुत अच्छा! अब तुम आराम करो और सात बजे तैयार हो कर रात को खाने के लिए बाहर आओ।	Very well! Now you rest and come out at 7 PM for dinner.
जेने:	ठीक है कमला जी, और आपके परिवार के और लोग कहाँ हैं?	Okay Kamala ji. Where are the other members of your family?
कमला:	अभी सब व्यस्त हैं, रात को खाने पर मैं तुम्हारा परिचय सब लोगों से करवा दूंगी।	Right now, they are busy. I will introduce you to all others at the dinner.
जेने:	ठीक है, कमला जी। आपका बहुत बहुत धन्यवाद!	Okay Kamala ji. Thanks to you.

Listening

Please listen to the above written conversation. [Click Here](#)

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Please talk to a native speaker of Hindi and find out things that you might need to live three months in India.

(b) If you have ever lived in India please make a list of things that you needed there.

धन्यवाद!

5.5 Verb "To be" in the Past Tense



Past Tense of “To be” Video

Instructor Video: [Verb “to be” in Past tense](#)

In previous chapter, we learned that verb “to be” होना in Hindi has four different forms in present tense. We also learned the uses of those four forms. See the table below for a quick review.

Forms of verb “to be” होना	Uses
हूँ	with मैं (I).
हो	with तू (familiar you).
हैं	with तू (informal you), यह (This, s/he), वह (That, s/he), and singular subjects.
हैं	with हम (we), आप (formal you), ये (These, They), वे (Those, They), and with plural and honorific subjects.

Today, we are going to learn about the past tense forms of the verb “to be” in Hindi. There are four forms of verb “to be” in the past form. Please see the table below for forms and their uses.

Forms of verb “to be” होना	Uses
था	with masculine singular subjects.
थी	with feminine singular subjects.
थे	with masculine plural and honorific subjects.
थीं	with feminine plural and honorific subjects.

Examples	
Hindi	English
इस कमरे में, एक लड़का (m. sing) था।	There was a boy in this room.
इस कमरे में, एक कुर्सी (f. sing) थी।	There was a chair in this room.
इस कमरे में दो दरवाजे (m. plu) थे।	There were two doors in this room.
इस कमरे में बहुत किताबें (f. plu) थीं।	There were many books in this room.
मोहन (m. sing) स्कूल में था।	Mohan was in school.
मेरे दोस्त (m. plu) बाजार में थे।	My friends were in the market.
पिता जी (m. sing, hon) बैठक में थे।	Father was in the living room.
सीता पुस्तकालय (f. sing) में थी।	Sita was in the library.
मेरी बहनें (f. plu) बगीचे में थीं।	My sisters were in the garden.
चाची जी (f. sing, hon) अपने कमरे में थीं।	Aunt was in her room.

Activity

Please choose the correct form of the past form of verb “to be” to fill in the blanks.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1177#h5p-77>

धन्यवाद !

5.6 Subject with को



Subject with को Video

Instructor Video: [Subject with -को](#)

In Hindi, subject can have a nominative case like English. Additionally, Hindi subject can also come with dative and ergative cases. Here, we are going to learn, subject with dative case. We use dative case when the subject is not a doer of an action, but an experiencer and/or a beneficiary of an action. Dative case in Hindi is marked with को “ko.”

There are a few verbs that require dative subject with को marking. In this chapter, we are going to learn only three in details and I will mention a few others here too. But, you will encounter more verbs, adjectives and nouns that require subject with को, as you progress further in Hindi language learning journey. As subject is marked with dative case को, the verb agrees with the object of that sentence.

Verbs that require dative subject with को	
पसंद	like
नापसंद	dislike
चाहिए	need

पसंद “to like.”

When you like someone or something, you are not doing anything actively, but you are mere experiencer of something that is pleasing to you. Hence, the verb “to like” needs a subject in dative case with को marker. When subject receive a case marker को which is a post-position, the subject changes into oblique form.

Examples		
Hindi	English	Explanation
मुझे चाय पसंद है।	I like tea.	मैं with को = मुझे in oblique, and verb है is agreeing with चाय “tea.” Literal translation of this Hindi sentence in English will be “to me tea is pleasing.” This pattern will follow for the rest of the examples given here.
मुझे मेरे छात्र पसंद हैं।	I like my students.	Here, the verb है is agreeing with plural subject छात्र “students.”
पीटर को हिन्दी पसंद है।	Peter likes Hindi.	Here, the verb है agrees with हिन्दी “Hindi.”
बचपन में, मेरे भाई को खिलौने पसंद थे।	In childhood, My brother liked toys.	Here, the verb थे agrees with खिलौने “toys.”

नापसंद “to dislike.”

Dislike is similar to like. Hence, the verb “to dislike” needs a subject in dative case with को marker. When subject receive a case marker को which is a post-position, the subject changes into oblique form.

Examples		
Hindi	English	Explanation
मुझे कॉफी नापसंद है।	I dislike coffee.	मैं with को = मुझे in oblique, and verb है is agreeing with कॉफी “coffee.” Literal translation of this Hindi sentence in English will be “to me coffee is displeasing.” This pattern will follow for the rest of the examples given here.
मुझे बर्देमान लोग नापसंद हैं।	I dislike dishonest people.	Here, the verb है is agreeing with plural subject बर्देमान लोग “dishonest people.”
पीटर को दौड़ना नापसंद है।	Peter dislikes running.	Here, the verb है agrees with a verb that acts as a noun (object) दौड़ना “to run.”
बचपन में, मेरे भाई को गाड़ियाँ नापसंद थीं।	In childhood, My brother disliked cars.	Here, the verb थीं agrees with गाड़ियाँ “cars.”

Note: पसंद नहीं = नापसंद — I Hindi, native speakers tend to use negative marker नहीं with पसंद to express dislike.

For example:

- मुझे कॉफी पसंद नहीं है। I do not like (dislike) coffee.
- पीटर को दौड़ना पसंद नहीं है। Peter does not like (dislikes) running. etc.

Activity

Please read the following questions carefully. After reading these question, please answer them and then ask these questions to three of your friends/family members and try to find common likes and dislikes.

	Questions	मझे	मरे दोस्त को	मरे दोस्त को	मरे दोस्त को
1	आपको कौन सा फल पसंद है?				
2	आपको कौन सी सब्जी पसंद है?				
3	आपको कौन सा रंग पसंद है?				
4	आपको कौन सा देश पसंद है?				
5	आपको कौन सा शहर पसंद है?				
6	आपको कौन सा फल नापसंद है?				
7	आपको कौन सी सब्जी नापसंद है?				
8	आपको कौन सा रंग नापसंद है?				
9	आपको कौन सा देश नापसंद है?				
10	आपको कौन सा शहर नापसंद है?				

धन्यवाद!

5.7 चाहिए "Need"



चाहिए "Need" Video

Instructor Video: [चाहिए "Need"](#)

As in English, need is a modal verb and different from "to want," like wise चाहिए "need" acts like a modal verb (it does not change its form based on the subject/object), and different from चाहना "to want."

Like पसंद "like," and नापसंद "dislike," चाहिए "need" also requires subject with को. However, चाहिए "need" as a modal verb does not agree with either with the subject or the object of a sentence, it remains the same.

It is used to express need and desire.

Examples		
Hindi	English	Explanation
मुझे पानी चाहिए।	I need water.	Subject is marked with को, and hence out of agreement. पानी is masculine, but चाहिए is modal verb and not changing its form either according to the subject or the object.
आपको क्या चाहिए ?	What do you need?	क्या "what" is unknown here, so we can't decide the number and gender of क्या. However, चाहिए will not change its form in any case.
मेरी बहन को एक किताब चाहिए।	My sister needs a book.	Here, मेरी बहन "My sister" is feminine and marked with को, and किताब "book" is feminine too. But, चाहिए will not change its form according to feminine किताब "book."
मेरे दोस्त को कुछ पैसे चाहिए।	My friend needs some money.	Here, मेरे दोस्त "My friend" is masculine and marked with को, and कुछ पैसे "some money" is masculine plural. But, चाहिए will not change its form according to feminine कुछ पैसे "some money."

Activities

Please write at least two sentence about what you need in several situations that are given below. After doing filling your part, please ask these questions to three of your friends/family members and then audio-record yourself.

	Situations	मुझे	मरे दोस्त को	मरे दोस्त को	मरे दोस्त को
1	भोजनालय में “at a restaurant,” आपको क्या चाहिए ?				
2	हवाई अड्डे पर “at an airport,” आपको क्या चाहिए ?				
3	स्कूल में “in a school,” आपको क्या चाहिए ?				
4	खाने की मेज पर “on the dinner table,” आपको क्या चाहिए ?				
5	जीवन/जिंदगी में “in life,” आपको क्या चाहिए ?				

Speaking



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=880#h5p-78>

Other nouns/adjectives/verbs that need subject with को

	Words	English	Example sentences
1	लगना	to feel	मुझे लगता है कि.... "I feel that..." मुझे लगता है कि आज बारिश होगी "I feel that it will rain today."
		to seem	मुझे लगता है कि हिन्दी बहुत आसान भाषा है "It seems to me that Hindi is an easy language."
		to take money/time	भारत जाने में हमें हजारों डॉलर्स लगते हैं "It takes thousands of dollars for us to go to India." शिकागो जाने में, मुझे चार घंटे लगते हैं "It takes me four hours to go to Chicago."
2	आना	to know how to.	मुझे तैरना आता है "I know how to swim." मुझे गाड़ी चलाना/चलानी आता/आती है "I know how to drive a car."
3	मालूम	to be aware of	मुझे मालूम है कि.... "I know that ..." मुझे मालूम है कि आप कहाँ रहते हैं "I know where you live." मुझे मालूम है कि अमेरिका के राष्ट्रपति कौन हैं "I know who is the president of America."
4	खुशी	happiness	मुझे खुशी है कि... "I am happy that..." मुझे खुशी है कि आप हिन्दी सीख रहे हैं "I am happy that you are learning Hindi."
4	अफसोस/ दुःख	regret/sad	मुझे अफसोस/दुःख है कि.... "I am sorry that ..." मुझे दुःख/अफसोस है कि मैं आप से नहीं मिल सका "I am sorry that I could not meet you." मुझे दुःख/अफसोस है कि आपकी दादी नहीं रही "I am sorry that your grandmother has passed away."
5	आशा	hope	मुझे आशा है कि.... "I hope that ..." मुझे आशा है कि आप सफल होंगे "I hope that you will be successful." मुझे आशा है कि एक दिन आप हिन्दी में बात करेंगे "I hope that you will converse in Hindi one day."
6	मिलना	happen to meet someone/to find/to get/to receive	मुझे वह एक दुकान में मिली "I happen to meet her in a shop." मुझे बगीचे में एक सौ डॉलर मिले "I found one hundred dollars in a garden." मुझे अच्छी चाय कहाँ मिलेगी "Where will I find good tea?" मुझे कम वेतन मिलता है "I receive/get less salary."

Activities

Please write 5 sentences with each of the following words given below. Please use subject with को for each sentence. After writing these sentences, please record your sentences and send it to your friends/family members.

(1)	खुशी	1	
		2	
		3	
		4	
		5	
(2)	अफ़सोस	1	
		2	
		3	
		4	
		5	
(3)	लगना	1	
		2	
		3	
		4	
		5	
(4)	आना	1	
		2	
		3	
		4	
		5	

Speaking



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=880#h5p-79>

धन्यवाद !

5.8 Expressing Possession in Hindi



Expressing Possession Video

Instructor Video: [Expressing Possession in Hindi](#)

In English, we use “to have” to express possession.

- For examples:
I have a car.
I have two sisters.
I have a fever.
This book has several chapters.

In Hindi, there are four different ways to express possession “to have.” It depends on a thing that is being possessed.

	In Hindi	Uses	Examples
To have	के पास	It is used to express possession of those inanimate things of which the ownership is not necessarily permanent, and are tangible, movable and material objects.	मरे पास बहुत किताबें हैं। “I have many books.” क्या आपके पास कुछ पैसे हैं? “Do you have some money?”
	का/के/की	का, के, की are used to express possession of kin, limbs of the body and also permanent/legal possessions such as land etc.	मेरा एक भाई है। I have a brother.” आप की आँखें सुन्दर हैं। “You have beautiful eyes.”
	को	को is used to show possession of abstract entity could be (a) Physical ailments such as fever, cold, cough, headache, etc. (b) Free time or work, and (c) Need.	उसको तेज बुखार है। “S/he has high fever.” मुझे बहुत काम है। “I have lots of work.”
	में	में is used to show possession of an integral part of a whole in Hindi.	मेरे घर में चार कमरे हैं। My home has four rooms.” मेरे स्कूल में पच्चीस अध्यापक हैं। My school has 25 teachers.”

Activity

Please choose the correct form of subject to express possession in Hindi.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=882#h5p-8o>

धन्यवाद !

5.9 Cultural Notes and Extra/ Optional Online Materials



Cultural Notes

	Topics	Explanation
1	Fruits and Vegetables shop in India and South Asia	In America, we typically go to a supermarket and/or farmers' market to buy fresh fruits and vegetables. But in India and South Asia, each small town/city/village has many small fruits and vegetables. Some towns have designated area for these small shops. Unlike America, you need to talk to the shopkeeper to ask for the price, negotiate the price before buying it. So, the conversation is a must.
2	At a restaurant in India and South Asia	Effect of globalization is very visible when it comes to restaurant in India and South Asia. However, there are still many smaller food stalls and restaurants which still are of old fashion. In these restaurants, they typically do not have menu card with price list. There is a typical server who will come to you with a glass of water and tell you what the available items and what are their prices.
3	चाहना and चाहिए	In English, there is a big difference between “to want,” and “to need.” However, in Hindi, native speakers use चाहिए “to need” for everything they want/need. चाहना “to want” is typically used in construction like मैं चाहता हूँ कि “I want that”
4	Expressing desire/need	Native speakers do not use direct statement such as “मझे ___x_ चाहिए” to express desire/need. Instead, they ask indirectly using question sentence and/or subjunctive. For example: क्या खाना है? (Is there food?) = मुझे खाना चाहिए। (I need food). क्या आपके पास कलम है? (Do you have a pen?) मुझे आपकी कलम चाहिए। (I need your pen.)

Extra/Optional Online Materials

Hindi song: “Mujhko tu chaahiye”



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1168#oembed-1>

At a restaurant:



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1168#oembed-2>

At a vegetable market:



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1168#oembed-3>

Thank you !

CHAPTER 6: GIVING INSTRUCTION AND MAKING REQUEST



“happy woman’s day, omkareshwar” by nevil zaveri (thank you for 20+M views:) is licensed under CC BY 2.0.

Goals of this Chapter

- You will learn Hindi verbs
- You will learn how to give instruction.
- You will learn how to make a formal request.
- You will learn how to ask/give direction.
- You will learn how to ask/give food recipe.
- You will learn how to ask/give suggestions.
- You will learn object with -ko and -se in Hindi.

धन्यवाद !

6.1 Review of Chapter 5



Vocabulary



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=930#h5p-85>

Grammar



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=930#h5p-86>

Reading/Listening

Reading: जेने समि कार्ड/मोबाइल फोन की दुकान पर

Context: Jen needs a sim card to use in India during her study abroad. she goes to a phone/sim card shop and buys a sim card.

जने:	नमस्ते जी, क्या आपके पास airtel का समि कार्ड है?	Namaste ji, do you have airtel sim card?
दुकानदार:	जी हाँ, यहाँ आपको सभी कम्पनीयों के समि कार्ड मिलेंगे।	Yes, here, you will sim card of all the companies.
जने:	मुझे airtel का एक समि कार्ड चाहिए।	I just need one airtel sim card.
दुकानदार:	ठीक है, क्या आपके पास कोई फोटो वाली पहचान कार्ड है?	Okay, Do you have any photo identity card?
जने:	जी हाँ, मेरे पास मेरा पासपोर्ट है।	Yes, I have my passport.
दुकानदार:	बहुत अच्छा। क्या आपके पास आपका कोई फोटो है?	Very good, do you have a photo?
जने:	जी हाँ, मेरी मेजबान माता जी ने कहा था कि मुझे फोटो ले जाना चाहिए। यह रहा मेरा फोटो।	Yes, my host mother had said that I should bring my photo. Here is my photo.
दुकानदार:	अरे वाह! यह बहुत अच्छी बात है। आपको समि कार्ड में कितने पैसे चाहिए?	Wonderful! This is good. How much money do you need in your sim card?
जने:	मुझे मालूम नहीं। क्या आप मुझे इसके बारे में बता सकते हैं?	I don't know. Can you tell me more about it?
दुकानदार:	जी हाँ जरूर, आम तौर पर, लोग तीन सौ रुपये का रीचार्ज खरीदते हैं। इसके अलावा, दो सौ रुपये का इन्टरनेट पैक।	Sure, generally, people get recharge of 300 rupees. Other than that, they also get internet pack of rupees 200.
जने:	ठीक है। मुझे भी ये दोनों चाहिए।	Okay. I need both of these.
दुकानदार:	बहुत अच्छा। यह लीजिये आपका समि कार्ड।	Very well. Here is your sim card.
जने:	कितने पैसे हुए?	How much money?
दुकानदार:	पांच सौ पचास रुपये।	550
जने:	अरे भाई, सिर्फ पांच सौ रुपये हुए ना?	Oh brother, is it not 500 rupees only?
दुकानदार:	नहीं मँडम, पचास रुपये समि शुरू करने का चार्ज है।	No madam, 50 rupees is service charge to activate the sim card.
जने:	अच्छा ठीक है। यह लीजिये आपके पांच सौ पचास रुपये।	Okay, alright. Please take this 550 rupees.
दुकानदार:	बहुत अच्छा, धन्यवाद!	Very good, thanks!

Listening

जने समि कार्ड/फोन की दुकान पर

Post reading/Listening Activities:



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=930#h5p-87>



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=930#h5p-88>

धन्यवाद !

6.2 Reading/Listening 1: मेरा पसंदीदा खाना और इसे बनाने की वधि



मेरा पसंदीदा खाना और इसे बनाने की वधि “My favorite food and its recipe”



“Spoonfuls of spice” by spurekar is licensed under CC BY 2.0.

Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

a) Please share your favorite Indian food with your friends and ask your friends their favorite food.

- b) Make a list of two common favorite food and watch their recipe videos on the internet.
- c) Discuss with your friends/family about common ingredients in Indian food. Make a list of five common ingredients in Indian food that people use.

Reading

मेरा पसंदीदा खाना और इसे बनाने की वधि

Context: Hritik and Vidya are talking about their favorite food during the lunch break. Hritik tells Vidya about his favorite food and its recipe.

वदिया:	कैसे हो ऋतिक ?	How are you Hritik?
ऋतिक:	मैं ठीक हूँ। धन्यवाद तुम कैसे हो ?	I am fine. Thanks. How are you?
वदिया:	मैं भी ठीक हूँ। धन्यवाद आज तुम्हारे लंच बॉक्स में क्या है?	I am good as well. Thanks. What is in your lunch box today?
ऋतिक:	आज मरे लंच बॉक्स में रोटी और सब्जी है।	I have break and vegetable in my lunch box today.
वदिया:	क्या यह तुम्हारा पसंदीदा खाना है ?	Is this your favorite food?
ऋतिक:	नहीं, मुझे खिचड़ी बहुत पसंद है।	No, I like khichadi a lot.
वदिया:	अरे वाह! मुझे भी खिचड़ी पसंद है। लेकिन मुझे खिचड़ी बनानी नहीं आती।	Wao! I too like khichadi. But I don't know how to cook it.
ऋतिक:	अरे यह तो बहुत आसान है।	This is very easy.
वदिया:	क्या तुम मुझे इसे बनाने की वधि बता सकते हो ?	Can you tell me the recipe of it.
ऋतिक:	बलिकूल, खिचड़ी बनाने के लिए तुम्हें चावल, दाल, टमाटर, प्याज, मटर, घी, लाल मरिच, हरी मरिच, अदरक, लहसून, जीरा, हिंग, हल्दी, गरम मसाला, धनिया और नमक चाहिए।	Sure, To cook khichadi, you need rice, lentils, tomato, onion, peas, ghee, red chilli, green chili, ginger, garlic, cumin, asafoetida, turmeric, garam masala, coriander, and salt.
वदिया:	मुझे लगता है किये सारी चीजें मरे घर पर हैं। अब मुझे इसे बनाने की वधि बताओ।	I think these all things are available at home. Now, tell me the recipe.
ऋतिक:	सबसे पहले एक प्रेशर कुकर में, घी डालो, फिर उस में जीरा, दो लाल मरिच और हिंग डालो। दो मिनट तलने के बाद उस में प्याज, टमाटर, मटर, अदरक, लहसून, और नमक डाल कर तीन से चार मिनट तक पकाओ। उसके बाद, उसमें हल्दी, और गरम मसाला डालो। जब एक पेस्ट तैयार हो जाय तो उसमें दाल और चावल डालो। उसे अच्छे से मिलाओ। फिर प्रेशर कुकर में चार-पांच कप पानी डाल कर पांच सट्टी लगने तक पकाओ। फिर प्रेशर कुकर खोलो और खिचड़ी को दही के साथ परोसो।	First of all, Add ghee, cumin, two red chilli and asafoetida in a pressure cooker. After frying that for two minutes, add onion, tomato, peas, ginger, garlic, and salt in that and cook for three to four minutes. After that add turmeric and garam masala in it. When the pest is ready, add rice and lentils in it. Mix it well. Add four to five cups of water in it and cook it till five whistles. After that open the pressure cooker and serve the khichadi with yogurt.
वदिया:	यह तो बहुत आसान है। मैं आज ही इसे बनाने की कोशिश करूँगी।	This is very easy. I will try to cook it today.
ऋतिक:	अच्छा वदिया, तुम्हारा पसंदीदा खाना क्या है ?	Okay Vidya, what is your favorite food?
वदिया:	मुझे तो चिकने करी बहुत पसंद है।	I like chicken curry a lot.
ऋतिक:	क्या तुम मुझे चिकने करी बनाने की वधि बता सकती हो ?	Can you tell me the recipe of the chicken curry?
वदिया:	हाँ, क्यों नहीं? लेकिन आज नहीं, कल।	Yes, why not? But not today, tomorrow.
ऋतिक:	ठीक है। फिर मिलेंगे।	Okay, see you again.
वदिया:	नमस्ते	Namaste.

Listening

मेरा पसंदीदा खाना और इसे बनाने की वधि

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Please check your comprehension.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=942#h5p-89>

- (b) List the ingredients of your favorite Indian food.
- (c) Please write the recipe of your favorite Indian food.
- (d) Please make a video of cooking your favorite Indian food, and share it with class/your friends.

Additional Listening

Please answer the questions integrated in the video.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

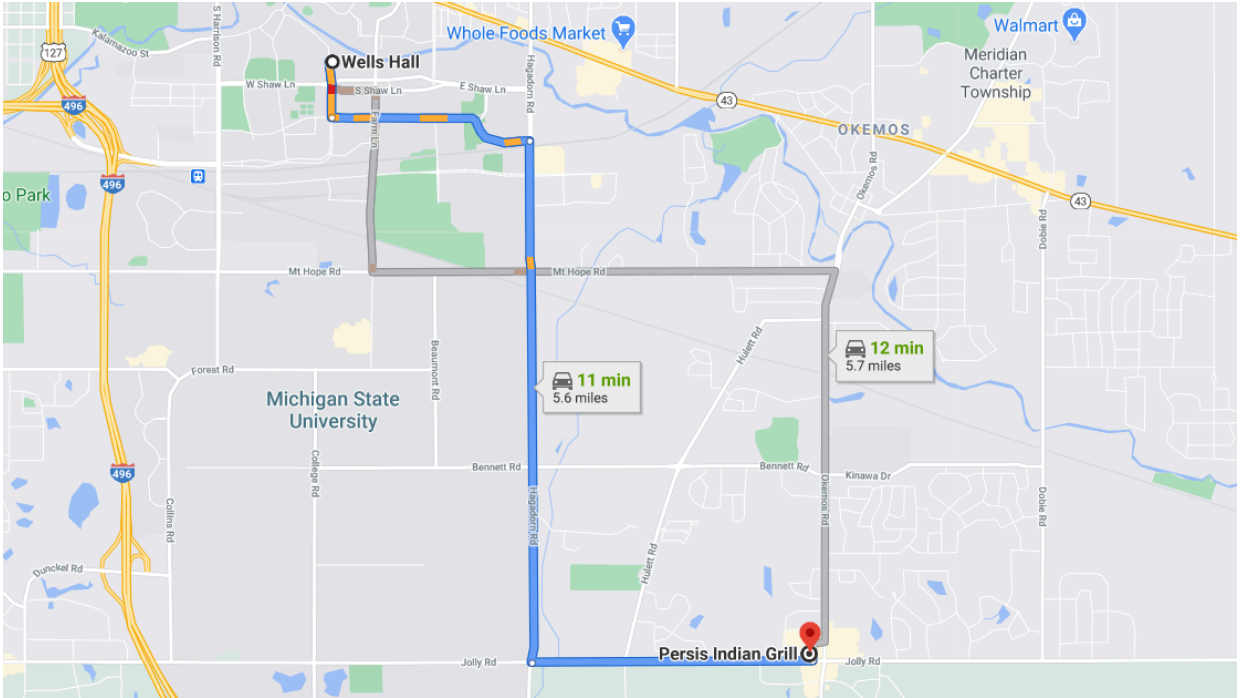
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=942#h5p-137>

धन्यवाद !

6.3 Reading/Listening 2: रास्ता बताना



रास्ता बताना “Giving Direction”



Pre-reading/listening activities

(a) Learn/review these phrases

रास्ता बताना	To tell the direction	दाहिनि मडुना	To turn right
सीधा जाना	To go straight	थोड़ी दूर पर	At a little distance
बाएँ मडुना	To turn left	थोड़ी देर में	In a little while

(b) Please go to google map (or any map that you use) and find your favorite place in your city/town and write the direction to that place from your school, and then try to say that in Hindi and make notes of your challenges.

Reading

रास्ता बताना

Context: Peter is at an Indian restaurant and ask Shilpa to join him for lunch. Shilpa does not know the place. So, Peter gives her the direction on a phone call.

पीटर:	हैलो शिल्पा	Hello Shilpa.
शिल्पा:	हैलो पीटर, क्या बात है? तुम कहाँ हो?	Hello Peter, What is the matter? Where are you?
पीटर:	मैं एक भारतीय रेस्टोरेंट में हूँ। यह बहुत अच्छी जगह है। अगर तुम खाली हो तो हम साथ में खाना खा सकते हैं।	I am at an Indian restaurant. This is a great place. If you are available we can eat lunch together.
शिल्पा:	हाँ, मैं खाली हूँ। मगर मुझे वहाँ का रास्ता मालूम नहीं।	Yes, I am available. But I don't know the direction to that place.
पीटर:	अभी तुम कहाँ हो?	Where are you right now?
शिल्पा:	मैं अभी Wells Hall में हूँ।	I am in Wells Hall right now.
पीटर:	अच्छा, वहाँ से Red Cedar Road पर आओ और बाएँ मुड़कर सीधा चलो, और फिर Shaw Lane पर बाएँ मुड़ो। थोड़ी दूर चल कर Farm Lane पर दाहिनी मुड़ो और सीधा चलो। उसके बाद, Mt. Hope Road पर बाएँ मुड़ो। उसके बाद, Haggadorn Road पर दाहिनी मुड़ो। Haggadorn Road पर तीन मील पर Jolly Road आयेगा। Jolly Road पर बाएँ मुड़ो। एक मील पर, तुम्हें यह रेस्टोरेंट मिलेगा।	Okay, Come out of Wells hall, and turn left and walk straight on Red Cedar Road, and then take a left turn on Shaw Lane. After a little distance, take a right turn on Farm Lane and go straight. After that turn left of Mt. Hope Road. After that turn right on Haggadorn Road. After going on Haggadorn for three miles, Jolly Road would come. Turn left on Jolly Road. After a mile, you will find this restaurant.
शिल्पा:	बहुत अच्छा। मैं थोड़ी देर में वहाँ आती हूँ।	Very well. I come there in a little bit.
पीटर:	ठीक है, मैं तुम्हारा इंतज़ार कर रहा हूँ।	Okay, I am waiting for you.

Listening

रास्ता बताना

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Please read/listen Peter's direction to an Indian restaurant in the above conversation and draw it on a paper and match that with the above given map.

(b) Review the direction related phrases.





An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=u62#h5p-90>

धन्यवाद !

6.4 Reading/Listening 3: सोसल मीडिया पर खाता खोलना



सोसल मीडिया पर खाता खोलना “To open a social media account”



“Automotive Social Media Marketing” by socialautomotive is licensed under CC BY 2.0.

Pre-Reading/listening Activities

- In a group of three or four friends, please share which social media you use and why?
- Please write 5 words that explains social media in Hindi. Please seek help if you cannot.
- Please discuss/debate virtues and vices of social media. Please write your points in Hindi as much as possible. Please ask your friends/teacher for help.

Reading

Context: Peter is informing Vidya about facebook and gives her direction to open a facebook account.

वदिया:	पीटर, तुम अपने फोन पर क्या करते रहते हो ?	Peter, what do you keep doing on your phone?
पीटर:	मैं अपना फेसबुक देखता रहता हूँ।	I keep checking my facebook.
वदिया:	यह फेसबुक क्या है ?	What is this facebook?
पीटर:	फेसबुक एक सोशल मीडिया है। फेसबुक में तुम दोस्त बना सकती हो, अपनी तस्वीर लगा सकती हो और दूसरे शहरों और देशों के दोस्तों से बात कर सकती हो। क्या तुम्हारा फेसबुक खाता नहीं है ?	Facebook is a social media. On facebook, you can make friends, post your photo and make friends from other towns and countries. Do you have a facebook account?
वदिया:	नहीं, आज मैं पहली बार इस फेसबुक के बारे में सुन रही हूँ। क्या तुम मुझे फेसबुक पर खाता खोलने में मदद करोगी ?	No, today, I am learning about the facebook first time. Will you help me to open a facebook account?
पीटर:	हाँ, जरूर, क्या तुम्हारा कोई ई.मेल अड्रेस है ?	Yes, indeed, do you have any e.mail. address?
वदिया:	हाँ, मेरा gmail पर एक खाता है।	Yes, I have an account on gmail.
पीटर:	ठीक है। अब तुम अपने फोन में facebook.com पर जाओ और create new account पर क्लिक करो। उसके बाद, अपना नाम, ई.मेल या फोन नंबर, पासवर्ड, जन्म तिथि और लिंग दर्ज करो। उसके बाद साइन अप पर क्लिक करो। उसके बाद ई.मेल या फोन नंबर की पुष्टि करो और तुम्हारा खाता खुल जाएगा।	Okay, Now you go to facebook.com on your phone and click on create new account. After that put your name, e.mail or phone number, password, date of birth and gender. After that click on sign up. After that confirm your e.mail or phone number and your account will open.
वदिया:	अरे वाह ! यह तो बहुत आसान है। फिर क्या करना है ?	Oh wao! This is so easy. Then what do I have to do?
पीटर:	उसके बाद तुम अपने profile में अपना फोटो और दूसरी सूचनाएं update कर सकती हो और दोस्तों को friend request भेज सकती हो।	After that you can update your profile photo and other information and can send friend requests to your friends.
वदिया:	बहुत अच्छा ! मैं आज ही फेसबुक पर खाता खोल कर तुम्हें friend request भेजूंगी।	Very well! Today, I will open a facebook account and will send you a friend request.
पीटर:	बहुत अच्छा, फिर हम फेसबुक पर बात करेंगे।	Very well, then we will chat on facebook.

Listening

सोशल मीडिया पर खाता खोलना

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

a) Please check your vocabulary



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1159#h5p-92>

b) Imagine you are working in rural part of India with villagers. You want them to open a gmail account but they don't know English. Please prepare a list of instructions in Hindi to open a gmail account for them.

c) Imagine that you are helping someone to do a project in the area of your major. Please decide a smaller project and write a list of instructions to complete the project.

धन्यवाद !

6.5 Study Abroad



Study Abroad Reading/Listening Activity



“Masala Tea and South Indian Filter Coffee — Chennai Banana Leaf, Syndal” by avlxyz is licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.

Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

a) In a group of three or four friends, please discuss what do you want to learn if/when you are in India/any other South Asian country.

b) In a group of three or four friends, please discuss different beverages that people drink in the morning in India/South Asia and in America.

Reading

Context: Jen wakes up early in the morning and saw her host mother making chai “tea” for the family and wants to learn how to make Indian chai.

जेन:	शुभ प्रातः, माता जी, आप क्या बना रही हैं?	Good morning, mother, what are you making?
कमला:	Good morning जेन, आज तुम जल्दी जाग गयी मैं परिवार के लिए चाय बना रही हूँ।	Good morning Jen, You are awake so early today. I am making chai for the family.
जेन:	यह तो बहुत अच्छी बात है। मैं चाय बनाना सीखना चाहती हूँ।	This is great. I want to learn how to make chai.
कमला:	चाय बनाना बहुत आसान है। सबसे पहले, एक पैन में पानी, दूध, चाय पत्ती, और चाय का मसाला डाल के उबालिए।	To make chai is very easy. First of all, please take water, milk, tea leaves, and tea spice in a saucepan and boil them.
	(थोड़ी देर बाद)	After a while
जेन:	कमला जी, यह अब उबल रहा है।	Kamala ji, this is boiling now.
कमला:	अब आंच कम कीजिये और इसे थोड़ा ठंडा होने दीजिये।	Now please lower the heat and let it cool down a little bit.
	(थोड़ी देर बाद)	After a while.
जेन:	कमला जी, यह अब थोड़ा ठंडा हो गया है।	Kamala ji, it gets cooler a little.
कमला:	ठीक है, अब चाय छननी से मसाले और चाय पत्ती को छान लीजिये।	Okay, now please strain the tea leaves and tea spices using a strainer.
जेन:	हो गया।	done.
कमला:	अब इसमें अपने स्वाद के अनुसार चीनी मिलाइए। आपकी चाय तैयार	Now add sugar in this according to your taste. Your tea is ready.
जेन:	यह मेरी ज़िन्दगी का सबसे पहला चाय है जो मैंने खुद बनाया है।	This is the first tea that I have made my own in my life.
कमला:	वाह! अगर आप चाहें तो परिवार के लिए हर रोज़ चाय बना सकती हैं।	Wao! If you want you can make tea for the family every day.
जेन:	अगर मैं हर दिन इस समय जाग पायी तो!	If I get up this time everyday.
	दोनों हँसती हैं और चाय का मजा लेती हैं।	Both laugh and enjoy their tea.

Listening

चाय बनाने की वधि

Post-Reading/Listening Activities:

a)



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1156#h5p-93>

b) Please try to follow the instruction given above and try to make a cup of chai for yourself.

c)



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1156#h5p-94>

धन्यवाद !

6.6 Verbs



Verb Video

Instructor Video: [Verb](#)

Verb is an action word. Like all languages, Hindi verbs can be classified in three categories.

a) **Intransitive verbs:** Verbs that require only one noun/pronoun and that noun/pronoun can either be the subject or the object of a sentence. For example: Walk, Swim, Sleep, arrive, fall, etc.

Verb	Hindi	English	Explanation
तैरना “to swim”	राज तैरता है।	Raj swims.	Here “Raj” a noun acts as a subject of the sentence.
सोना “to sleep”	मैं ४ बजे सोता हूँ।	I wake up at 4 o'clock.	Here “I” a pronoun acts as a subject of the sentence.
पहुँचना “to arrive”	ट्रेने पहुँची	Train arrived.	Here “train” as a noun is an object of the sentence. Because you can ask “what” question (What arrived?).
गरिना “to fall”	पत्ते गरिते हैं।	Leaves fall.	Here “leaves” as a noun is an object of the sentence. Because you can ask “what” question (What falls?).

b) **Transitive verbs:** Verbs that require two nouns/pronouns. One acts as a subject and other as an object. For example: Eat, Drink, Read, etc.

Verb	Hindi	English	Explanation
खाना “to eat”	मैं खाना खाता हूँ।	I eat food.	Here pronoun “I” acts as a subject, and noun “food” acts as an object.
पढ़ना “to read”	राहुल किताबें पढ़ता है।	Rahul reads books.	Here noun “Rahul” acts as a subject, and noun “books” acts as an object.
देखना “to watch”	वह फ़िल्में देखती है।	She watches films.	Here pronoun “she” acts as a subject, and noun “films” acts as an object.

c) **Di-transitive verb:** Verbs that require three nouns/pronouns. Nouns/pronouns acts as a subject, indirect object and direct object in a sentence. For example: Give, Send, Receive, etc.

Verb	Hindi	English	Explanation
देना “to give”	मैं बच्चों को मठाइयाँ देता हूँ।	I give sweets to children.	Here pronoun “I” acts as a subject, noun “children” acts as an indirect object, and noun “sweets” acts as a direct object.
भेजना “to send”	मोहन माँ को पत्र भेजता है।	Mohan sends letters to mother.	Here noun “Mohan” acts as a subject, noun “mother” acts as an indirect object, and noun “letters” acts as a direct object.
बेचना “to sell”	राहुल लोगों को किताबें बेचता है।	Rahul sells books to people.	Here noun “Rahul” acts as a subject, noun “people” acts as an indirect object, and noun “books” acts as a direct object.

List of Commonly Used Verbs

English	verb type	Hindi	English	verb type	Hindi
To do	tran.	करना	To learn	tran.	सीखना
To go	intran.	जाना	To converse	tran.	बात करना
To come	intran.	आना	To laugh	intran.	हँसना
To turn	intran.	मुड़ना	To cry/weep	intran.	रोना
To reach	intran.	पहुँचना	To feel	tran.	महसूस करना
To return	intran.	लौटना	To use	tran.	उपयोग करना
To run	intran.	दौड़ना	To wait	tran.	इंतज़ार करना
To practice	tran.	अभ्यास करना	To remember	tran.	याद करना
To exercise	tran.	कसरत करना	To end	tran.	खत्म करना
To eat	tran.	खाना	To clean	tran.	साफ़ करना
To make food	tran.	खाना बनाना	To open	tran.	खोलना
To drink	tran.	पीना	To shut down	tran.	बंद करना
To die	intran.	मरना	To explain	ditran.	समझाना
To stand up	intran.	खड़ा होना	To buy	ditran.	खरीदना
To sit down	intran.	बैठना	To sell	ditran.	बेचना
To sleep	intran.	सोना	To see/watch	tran.	देखना
To wake up	intran.	जागना	To wash	tran.	धोना
To rest	tran.	आराम करना	To want	tran.	चाहना
To read/study	tran.	पढ़ना	To receive	tran.	प्राप्त करना
To teach	tran.	पढ़ाना	To plan	tran.	योजना बनाना
To write	tran.	लिखना	To keep	tran.	रखना
To speak	tran.	बोलना	To tour	tran.	सैर करना
To ask	ditran.	पूछना	To ride	tran.	सवारी करना
To say	tran.	कहना	To take	ditran.	लेना
To listen	tran.	सुनना	To give	ditran.	देना
To answer	tran.	उत्तर देना	To forgive	tran.	माफ़ करना

Activity

Please match the followings:





An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=982#h5p-95>

धन्यवाद !

6.7 Imperative Construction



Imperative Construction Video

Instructor Video: [Imperative Construction](#)

Imperative sentences are sentences that express request, commands, order, instruction, etc. Like in English, Subject “You” is dropped. However, unlike English, Hindi has three different forms of the pronoun ‘You,’ which are used in three different sociocultural contexts, as explained below.

English	Hindi	Uses
You	तू	तू is used for someone who is younger in age, lower socio-economic class. It is also used with someone who is very intimate to the speaker such as friend, mother, and God.
You	तुम	तुम is used for someone who is of the same age group, and same socio-economic class.
You	आप	आप is used for someone who is older in age, and higher socio-economic class. It is used for anyone who one wants to show respect.

Forms of Imperative Construction Based on Three Different Forms of “You”

The forms for “तू” and “तुम” are used for instruction, and command. Whereas, the form for “आप” is used for request.

Verbs	“तू” Drop the -ना part of the verb	“तुम” Drop the -ना part and add “ओ”	“आप” Drop the -ना part and add “इये”
खाना “To eat”	खा	खाओ	खाइये
जाना “To go”	जा	जाओ	जाइये
आना “To come”	आ	आओ	आइये
पढ़ना “To read/study”	पढ़	पढ़ो	पढ़िये
लखना “To write”	लखि	लखिओ	लखिये
सोना “To sleep”	सो	सोओ	सोइये
बोलना “To speak”	बोल	बोलो	बोलिये
सुनना “To listen”	सुन	सुनो	सुनिये
बैठना “To sit”	बैठ	बैठो	बैठिये
बनाना “To make”	बना	बनाओ	बनाइये

Some Irregular Imperative Forms

Verbs	“तू”	“तुम”	“आप”
करना “To do”	कर	करो	कीजिये
लेना “To take”	ले	लो	लीजिये
देना “To give”	दे	दो	दीजिये
पीना	पी	पिये	पीजिये

Giving Instruction and Command

To give instruction and command, in Hindi, “तू” and “तुम” forms of the verb are used.

For example:

- यहाँ आ/आओ “Come here.”
- घर जा/जाओ “Go home.”
- मेरी कतिब ला/लाओ “Bring my book.”
- मुझ से बात कर/करो “Talk to me.”
- जॉन को अपनी कार बचे/बेचो “Sell your car to John.”

Making Requests

To make request, in Hindi, “आप” form of the verb is used.

For example:

- यहाँ आइये “Please come here.”
- घर जाइये “Please go home.”

- मेरी कतिब लाइये "Please bring my book."
- मझु से बात कीजिये "Please talk to me."
- जॉन को अपनी कार बेचिये "Please sell your car to John."

Use of जरा/कृपया

In Hindi, formal imperatives do not necessarily imply "please." Just as in any language, the tone of voice, context, and personal relationships affect politeness.

The adverb कृपया (please), जरा (just, a little) is used to make a command milder/extra polite.

For example:

- कृपया/जरा यहाँ आइये "Please come here."
- कृपया/जरा घर जाइये "Please go home."
- कृपया/जरा मेरी कतिब लाइये "Please bring my book."
- कृपया/जरा मझु से बात कीजिये "Please talk to me."
- कृपया/जरा जॉन को अपनी कार बेचिये "Please sell your car to John."

Negation of Imperative Construction

In order to make negative imperative, command, and making negative request, in Hindi, words like "न" and "मत" can be used.

For example

- यहाँ न/मत आ/आओ "Do not come here."
- घर न/मत जा/जाओ "Do not go home."
- मेरी कतिब न/मत लाइये "Please do not bring my book."
- मझु से बात न/मत कीजिये "Please do not talk to me."
- कृपया/जरा जॉन को अपनी कार न/मत बेचिये "Please do not sell your car to John."

Note: Use of "न" post verb place in an imperative construction will make it request, and not a negative sentence.

For example:

"न" before verb for negation	"न" after verb for request
यहाँ न आइये "Please do not come here."	यहाँ आइये न "Please come here."
मझु से बात न कीजिये "Please do not talk to me."	मझु से बात कीजिये न "Please talk to me."
मेरी बात न सुनिये "Please do not listen to me."	मेरी बात सुनिये न "Please listen to me"

Activities

- Please write ten sentences of instructions and ask your friend to enact them, and vice-versa.
- Make a list of ten things that you want your parents to do for you. Please use "आप" form of the imperative construction.
- Please choose the correct form of the pronoun "You."



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1152#h5p-96>

धन्यवाद !

6.8 Object with को and से



Object with को and से Video

Instructor Video: [Object with -ko and -se](#)

को

In previous chapter, we have learned that the postposition को is used with the subject (a) when the subject is not an active doer of an action, but an experiencer, (b) to express internal feelings and sensation, (c) with the words like चाहिए “need,” लगना “feel,” आना “know how to,” मालूम “aware,” etc.

For example:

- राकेश को एक किताब चाहिए | “Rakesh needs a book.”
- मुझे बुखार है | “I have a fever.”
- उसको लगता है कि आज बारिश होगी | “He feels that it will rain today.”
- मुझे खाना बनाना आता है | “I know how to cook food.”
- सब को मालूम है कि हम दोस्त हैं | “Everyone knows that we are friends.”

Uses of Post-Position को

(a) With an inanimate definite object (not with inanimate indefinite object). Typically, the object with को also needs demonstrative pronouns such as यह “this,” वह “that,” etc., in oblique form as they are followed by postposition को.

For example:

- इस किताब को पढ़िए | “Please read this book.”
- इन चीजों को मत छुड़िये | “Please do not touch these things.”
- उन थालियों को धोइये | “Please wash those plates”
- उस कलम को खरीदिये | “Please buy that pen.”

(b) With animate direct object.

For example:

- जानवरों को मत मारो | “Do not kill animals.”
- जॉन ने मैरी को किस किया | “John kissed Mary.”

- बच्चों को मत पीटो | “Do not beat the children.”

(c) With indirect object.

- बच्चों को मठाइयाँ दीजिये | “Please give sweets to the children.”
- अपनी माँ को चिट्ठी लिखो | “Write a letter to your mother.”
- दोस्तों को उपहार भेजो | “Send gifts to friends.”
- छात्रों को सवाल समझाओ | “Explain the question to students.”

से

(a) Postposition से is used with objects of the verbs of speaking, telling, etc.

For example:

- मुझसे बात कीजिये | “Please talk to me.”
- शिक्षक से सवाल पूछिए | “Please ask question to the teacher.”
- छात्रों से कहिये कि मुझसे हिन्दी में बात करें | “Please ask students to talk to me in Hindi.”
- उसने मुझसे हिन्दी में बोला कि मैं अच्छा आदमी हूँ | “He said to me in Hindi that I am a good man.”

(b) Postposition से is used with an object with verbs that require instrument, an equal active participant of an action.

- मुझसे मिलिये | “Please meet me.”
- माँ बच्चों से प्यार करती हैं | “Mother loves children.”
- मैं आपसे प्यार करता हूँ | “I love you.”

Activity



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1150#h5p-100>

धन्यवाद !

6.9 Expressing Obligation and Suggestions



Expressing Obligation and Suggestions Video

Instructor Video: [Expressing Obligations and Suggestions](#)

In previous chapter, you have learned that चाहिए “need” is used to express the need. चाहिए “need” always takes subject with को.

For example:

- मुझे किताबें चाहिए | “I need books.”
- आपको क्या चाहिए ? “What do you need?”
- सब को पैसे चाहिए | “Everyone needs money.”

However, when चाहिए “need” comes with verb, it expresses suggestion and obligation.

For example:

- आपको अपना काम करना चाहिए | “You should do your work.”
- सब को हिन्दी में बात करनी चाहिए | “All should converse in Hindi.”
- आपको अपने माता-पिता का आदर करना चाहिए | “You should/ought to respect your parents.”
- अब मुझे घर जाना चाहिए | “Now, I should go home.”

Activities

(a) Imagine that you and your friends are planning a trip to a tourist place. Please make a list of 10 things that you need and 10 things that you should do. [Hints: please use “noun+चाहिए” for things that you need, and “verb+चाहिए” for things that you should do].

(b) Imagine that you met a freshman who wants to do know what to do and what not to do in college level classes. Please make a list of 5 things that you think s/he should or should not do.

(c) In a group of two or three friends who are learning Hindi, please discuss how you can further improve your Hindi language skills. Please make a list of ten suggestions that you and your friends should be doing to improve your Hindi language skills.

धन्यवाद !

6.10 Cultural Notes and Extra/ Optional Online Materials



Cultural Notes

	Topics	Explanation
1.	तू, तम, आप	It is very important for all Hindi language learners to learn the proper uses of तू, तम, आप. Typically, people learn about students' cultural competence based on their uses of these three variants of the pronoun "You." As it is explained in the chapter, you should use them appropriately.
2.	Giving order	As you learned in this chapter that तू and तम forms are used for giving instruction and command. Hindi native speakers hardly use this with strangers. So, if you meet any strangers please use आप form and try not to give instruction and command form.
3.	Making request	Please use this आप form to make a request. However, it is important to keep in mind that native speakers may use subjunctive to express request and not the imperative forms of आप.
4.	Cooking	Unlike America, in India, traditionally, people learn to cook by either participating in cooking or observing. Reading a cook book and/or follow any written recipe is not in culture.
5.	Giving direction	In India, people use landmarks for giving direction because towns/cities are not well planned and hence no one really knows the name of the street other than the main streets/roads.
6.	Giving suggestions	Indians and South Asians always give advice and suggestions even though you won't ask for it. It may sound for non-Indians as violation of privacy and receiving unsolicited suggestions. However, this is the way they show that they care and express their love for you. Please observe this culture and participate in this. Additionally, older people may use imperative construction to give suggestions/advice rather than (verb+चाहिए) construction which might sound rude but this is how they want to emphasize that you should do what s/he is suggesting you.

Extra/Optional Online Materials

Verbs:

<https://www.hindipod101.com/hindi-vocabulary-lists/50-most-common-verbs>

Recipe:



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1144#oembed-1>

Giving Direction in Hindi



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1144#oembed-2>

Free Advice in India/South Asia.



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1144#oembed-3>

धन्यवाद !

CHAPTER 7: EXPRESSING PRESENT, PAST, AND FUTURE ACTIONS



A farmer

Goals of this Chapter

- You will learn time expressions.
- You will learn how to express your habitual actions.
- You will learn how to express your daily routine.
- You will learn how to express general, and universal truths.
- You will learn how to narrate a story and express series of events.
- You will learn how to express temporary and permanent actions.
- You will learn how to express your future plans.

धन्यवाद !

7.1 Review of Chapter 6



Vocabulary



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1025#h5p-101>

Grammar

Fill in the blanks with the suitable word:



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1025#h5p-102>

Reading/Listening

Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

- (a) With your friends, please make a list of documents that you need to open a bank account.
- (b) Make a list of personal information that you need to fill up an application to open a bank account [Hint: please go online and look for an application to open a bank account].
- (c) Discuss with your teacher or an Indian/South Asian person about things that you need here to open a bank account versus in India.

Reading

बैंक मॅखाता खोलना

ऋतकि:	पीटर भाई, नमस्ते, क्या हाल है?	Brother Peter, namaste, how are you?
पीटर:	नमस्ते ऋतकि भाई, सब ठीक है। मगर मुझे तुम्हारी मदद चाहिए।	namaste, brother Hrithik, All is well. But, I need your help.
ऋतकि:	कहो, मैं तुम्हारी क्या मदद कर सकता हूँ?	Tell, How can I help you?
पीटर:	मुझे एक छात्रवृत्ति मिली है। मगर मेरा बैंक मॅखाता नहीं है।	I have received a scholarship. But, I do not have my bank account.
ऋतकि:	बधाई हो। बैंक मॅखाता खोलने में, मैं तुम्हारी मदद करूँगा।	Congratulations ! I will help you to open a bank account.
पीटर:	ठीक है। धन्यवाद। मुझे क्या करना होगा ?	Okay. Thank you. What will I have to do?
ऋतकि:	कल तुम एक बैंक से खाता खोलने वाला आवेदन पत्र लाओ।	Bring an application form to open a bank account tomorrow.
पीटर:	ठीक है। मुझे और कनि चीजों की जरूरत होगी ?	Okay. What else will I need?
ऋतकि:	तुम्हें दो फोटो, आधार कार्ड, और एक ग्वारन्टर चाहिए।	You need two photos, aadhar card, and a guarantor.
पीटर:	मेरे पास फोटो हैं। मगर मैं विदेशी हूँ। मेरे पास आधार कार्ड नहीं है।	I have photos. But I am a foreigner. I do not have a aadhar card.
ऋतकि:	कोई बात नहीं, अपना पासपोर्ट लाओ।	No worries. Bring your passport.
पीटर:	ठीक है। मगर ग्वारन्टर कौन होगा ?	Okay. But, who will be the guarantor?
ऋतकि:	मेरा बैंक मॅखाता है। मैं तुम्हारा ग्वारन्टर बन सकता हूँ।	I have a bank account. I can be your guarantor.
पीटर:	अरे वाह ! यह तो बहुत अच्छी बात है। मुझे आज ही आवेदन पत्र ले आना चाहिए।	Wao! This is great. I should bring the application today itself.
ऋतकि:	ठीक है, हम कल मिलेंगे।	Okay. We will meet tomorrow.

Listening

बैंक मॅखाता खोलना

Post-Reading/Listening Activities


(a) Please check your vocabulary



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1025#h5p-103>

(b) In a group of two or three, please look at the following application form to open a bank account. Please make sure that you learn all the words there and you know what information is needed. You can print this and ask your instructor to check your filled-up application form.

व्यक्तिगत खाता खोलने का फार्म				इलाहाबाद ग्रामीण बैंक		www.allahabadgraminbank.in	
शाखा का नाम		प्र.का. : डी.एम. कालोनी, सिविल लाइन्स, बौदा-210 001		खाता संख्या			
शाखा कूट		तिथि		दि		मा मा व व व व	
मैं/हम आपसे मेरी/हमारी सीआईएफ संख्या हेतु मेरे/हमारे द्वारा दी गई सूचना के आधार पर नियमानुसार विनिर्दिष्ट (✓) विवरण के अनुसार खाता खोलने का अनुरोध करता हूँ/करते हैं		सी.आई.एफ. संख्या					
पुरा नाम स्पष्ट अक्षरों में							
क							
ख							
ग							
स्थिति, कृपया टिक (✓) करें		अवयस्क*		जनता		स्टाफ	
						वरिष्ठ नागरिक	
						वरिष्ठ नागरिक एवं स्टाफ	
*अवयस्क के मामले में							
अभिभावक का नाम				अभिभावक की सी.आई.एफ. संख्या			
अवयस्क का अभिभावक के साथ संबंध		पिता		माता		विधिक अभिभावक	
खाते की श्रेणी, कृपया टिक (✓) करें		घरेलू		निवासी सामान्य @		अनिवासी बाह्य @	
@ फेमा नियम लागू						ई ई ई एफ सी @	
						एफ. सी. एन. आर. @	
						आर. एफ. सी. @	
खाते का प्रकार, कृपया टिक करें (✓)		बचत बैंक खाता		ब.बैं. खाता महिला संवर्धन		चालू खाता प्रीमियम	
		ब.बैं. खाता विकास		ब.बैं. खाता पेंशन		आवर्ती जमा	
		ब.बैं. खाता प्रीमियम		चालू खाता		सावधि जमा	
		ब.बैं. खाता नो फ्रिल		चालू खाता प्लस		दोहरी जमा योजना	
						अन्य (कृपया स्पष्ट करें)	
प्रारंभिक जमा/मासिक जमा (आवर्ती जमा के मामले) रु.				(शब्दों में रूपये मात्र)			
नकद/ब.बैं./चा.ख./न.क्र./ओ.डी. खाता सं. के माध्यम से				चेक सं.			
जमा अवधि अथवा जमा की देय तिथि		दि		दि		मा मा व व व व	
अपेक्षित लेनदेन का प्रकार (ब.बैं./चा.ख. हेतु)		दिन/माह		लिंक खाता संख्या (ब.बैं./चा.ख./न.क्र./ओ.डी.) (मियादी जमा/आवर्ती की प्राप्ति/व्याज करने हेतु)			
परिचालन का प्रकार		मेरे द्वारा		हम में से कोई भी/उत्तरजीवी		पूर्व/उत्तरजीवी	
		किन्हीं दो द्वारा संयुक्त रूप से		अवयस्क की ओर से अभिभावक द्वारा		अन्य कोई (स्पष्ट करें)	
अन्य अपेक्षित सुविधाएं (पृष्ठ 2 पर भरे जाने वाले विवरण)							
तुरंत डेबिट कार्ड		इंटरनेट बैंकिंग		एस एम एस बैंकिंग/फोन बैंकिंग		नामांकन आवश्यक है (हाँ/नहीं)	
फोटो चिपकार्ड 6 माह से अधिक पुराना न हो		क		ख		ग	
नमूना हस्ताक्षर अथवा शब्दों का निधान							
कार्यालयीन प्रयोग हेतु							
\$ खाता खोलें		एस.एस.सं. सहित प्राधिकृत अधिकारी का हस्ताक्षर		को खाता खोला गया		द्वारा खाता खोला गया	
		दि		दि		मा मा व व व व	
को नामांकन दर्ज किया गया एवं पावली दी गई		दि		दि		मा मा व व व व	
						नाम एवं हस्ताक्षर	
खाता खोलवाने वाला/वाले व्यक्ति नामित नहीं करना चाहता/चाहते। आवेदक ने इस आशय का पत्र दिया है/देने से इनकार किया है* (*जो लागू न हो उसे काट दें)							
डेबिट कार्ड नम्बर (अंतिम 12 अंक)		को जारी किया गया		इंटरनेट बैंकिंग/मोबाइल बैंकिंग ऑफ़केट नं.		को जारी किया गया	
		दि		दि		मा मा व व व व	
ब.बैं./चा.ख. के मामले में विनिर्दिष्ट लेनदेनों के प्रकार एवं राशि के आधार पर ग्राहकों की जोखिम श्रेणी		न्यून/मध्यम/उच्च				प्रारंभिक सीमा रु.	
दिनांक :		एस.एस.सं. सहित नाम एवं हस्ताक्षर					

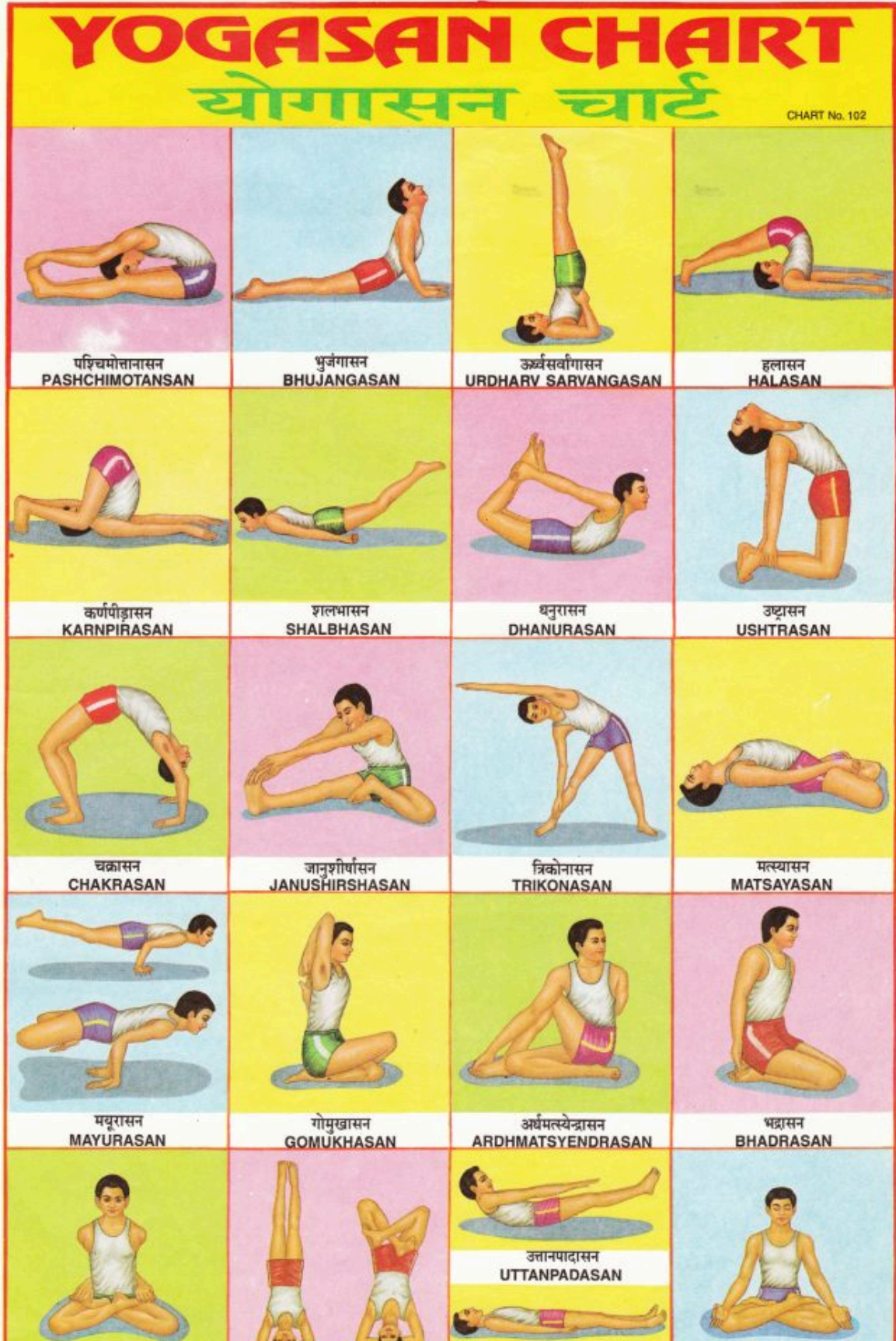
(c) Please find an application form of any American bank and try to recreate that form in Hindi.
[Hint: you can use the words used in the above Hindi language application].

धन्यवाद !

7.2 Reading/Listening 1: दनिचर्या



दैनिकीया “Daily routine”



“Yogasan Chart” by counterclockwise is licensed under CC BY-NC-SA 2.0.

Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Complete the table with the things you do at the given time of any typical day.

मरी दनचर्या

समय “Time”	आप क्या करते/करती है? “What do you do?”	समय “Time”	आप क्या करते/करती है? “What do you do?”
6:00 AM		03:00 PM	
7:00 AM		04:00 PM	
8:00 AM		05:00 PM	
9:00 AM		06:00 PM	
10:00 AM		07:00 PM	
11:00 AM		08:00 PM	
12:00 PM		09:00 PM	
01:00 PM		10:00 PM	
02:00 PM		11:00 PM	

(b) Please learn the following vocabulary

Hindi	English	Hindi	English
सुबह <i>n.f.</i>	Morning	सवा <i>adj.</i>	1:15 AM/PM
दोपहर <i>n.f.</i>	Afternoon	डेढ़ <i>adj.</i>	1:30 AM/PM
शाम <i>n.f.</i>	Evening	ढाई <i>adj.</i>	2:30 AM/PM
रात <i>n.f.</i>	Night	सवा दो <i>phrase</i>	2:15 AM/PM
दिन <i>n.m.</i>	Day	साढ़े,तीन <i>phrase</i>	3:00 AM/PM
रविवार <i>n.m.</i>	Sunday	पौने चार <i>phrase</i>	03:45 AM/PM
सोमवार <i>n.m.</i>	Monday	x के पहले <i>pp.</i>	Before X
मंगलवार <i>n.m.</i>	Tuesday	x के बाद <i>pp.</i>	After X
बुधवार <i>n.m.</i>	Wednesday	सप्ताह <i>n.m.</i>	Week
गुरुवार <i>n.m.</i>	Thursday	सप्ताहांत <i>n.m.</i>	Weekend
शुक्रवार <i>n.m.</i>	Friday	महीना <i>n.m.</i>	Month
शनिवार <i>n.m.</i>	Saturday	वर्ष <i>n.m./साल n.m.</i>	Year
बजे <i>n.m.</i>	O'clock	कतिने बजे <i>phrase</i>	At what time
३ बजे हैं <i>phrase</i>	It is 3 o'clock.	आप x बजे क्या करते/करती हैं? <i>phrase</i>	What do you do at X o'clock?

Reading

दैनिकी

Context: Shilpa and Peter are talking about what they do during the different times of a day.

शिल्पा:	नमस्ते पीटर, तुम क्या कर रहे हो?	Hello Peter, what are you doing?
पीटर:	नमस्ते शिल्पा, मैं अभी पढ़ाई कर रहा हूँ। मैं आम तौर से ३ बजे शाम को पढ़ाई करता हूँ। तुम क्या कर रही हो?	Hello Shilpa, I am studying right now. Generally, I study at 3 o'clock in the evening. What are you doing?
शिल्पा:	मैं अभी योग करने जा रही हूँ। तुम सुबह कब जागते हो ?	I am going to do yoga. When do you get up in the morning?
पीटर:	मैं हर दिन ५ बजे सुबह जागता हूँ। और तुम ?	I get up at 5 o'clock in the morning everyday. And you?
शिल्पा:	मैं ६ बजे जागती हूँ। तुम नाश्ता कब करते हो ?	I get up at 6 o'clock. When do you eat breakfast?
पीटर:	मैं जागने के बाद कसरत करता हूँ। मैं कसरत करने के बाद स्नान करता हूँ। उसके बाद लगभग साढ़े सात बजे नाश्ता करता हूँ। तुम नाश्ता कब करती हो ?	After waking up, I work out. After work out, I bathe, after that around 7:15, I eat breakfast. When do you eat breakfast?
शिल्पा:	मैं आठ या सवा आठ बजे नाश्ता करती हूँ। तुम शाम को चार बजे क्या करते हो?	I eat breakfast 8 or 8:15 o'clock. What do you do at 4 o'clock in the evening?
पीटर:	मैं ३ से ६ बजे तक पढ़ाई करता हूँ। और तुम ?	I study from 3 to 6 o'clock. And you?
शिल्पा:	मैं ३ से ४ बजे तक योग करती हूँ। उसके बाद थोड़ा आराम करती हूँ। तुम कब सोते हो ?	I do yoga from 3 to 4 o'clock. After that I rest a little. When do you sleep?
पीटर:	मैं करीब रात के १० बजे सोता हूँ। और तुम ?	I sleep around 10 o'clock. And you?
शिल्पा:	मैं करीब ११ बजे सोती हूँ। क्या तुम इस शनिवार या रविवार की शाम खाली हो ?	I sleep around 11 o'clock. Are you available this Saturday or Sunday evening?
पीटर:	हाँ, आम तौर पर, मैं सप्ताहांत में खाली रहता हूँ। क्यों क्या बात है ?	Yes, generally, I am available on weekend. Why, what's the matter?
शिल्पा:	मैं एक फ़िल्म देखना चाहती हूँ। अगर तुम खाली हो तो हम एक फ़िल्म देख सकते हैं।	I want to watch a film. If you are available we can watch a film.
पीटर:	अरे वाह ! यह तो बहुत अच्छी योजना है। हम एक हिन्दी फ़िल्म देखेंगे।	Wao/Great ! This is good plan. We will watch a Hindi film.
शिल्पा:	ठीक है।	Okay

Listening

दिनिचर्या

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Check your vocabulary



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1039#h5p-104>

(b) Based on the above reading/listening, please complete the following table.

वह कब _____ है?	पीटर	शिल्पा
जागता /जागती		
नाश्ता करता/करती		
सोता/सोती		

(c) Based on your own daily routine (that you have done in pre-reading/listening activity), please talk to a friend and make a list of her/him daily routine. Please find out where your routine matches with her/him.

मरे दोस्त की दैनिकी

समय "Time"	आप क्या करते/करती हैं? "What do you do?"	समय "Time"	आप क्या करते/करती हैं? "What do you do?"
6:00 AM		03:00 PM	
7:00 AM		04:00 PM	
8:00 AM		05:00 PM	
9:00 AM		06:00 PM	
10:00 AM		07:00 PM	
11:00 AM		08:00 PM	
12:00 PM		09:00 PM	
01:00 PM		10:00 PM	
02:00 PM		11:00 PM	

धन्यवाद !

7.3 Reading/Listening 2: मरे शौक



मरे शौक “My hobbies”



"Deceived Heroine (Vipralabdha), Nayika Painting Appended to a Ragamala (Garland of Melodies)

Pre-Reading/Listening Activities:

- (a) Please make a list of your hobbies.
(b) Make a list of things that you do during the weekend, but not on week days.

Reading

Context: Shilpa and Sangeeta talk about their weekends and their hobbies.

संगीता:	कैसी हो, शिल्पा ? सुना कतिम और पीटर फ़िल्म देखने गये थे।	How are you, Shilpa? I heard that you and peter went to watch a movie.
शिल्पा	मैं ठीक हूँ। धन्यवाद ! हाँ पछिले शनिवार को हम ने एक फ़िल्म देखी। तुम सप्ताहात में क्या करती हो?	I am well. Thank you! Yes, last Saturday, we watch a movie. What do you do on weekend?
संगीता:	मैं अपने खाली समय में किताबें पढ़ती हूँ और चित्रकारी करती हूँ। तुम क्या करती हो ?	In my available time, I read books and paint. What do you do?
शिल्पा	मैं फ़िल्मों देखती हूँ और टेबल टेनिस खेलती हूँ। और हाँ, मैं योग अभ्यास भी करती हूँ।	I watch movies, and play table tennis. And, yes, I do yoga too.
संगीता:	अरे बाह ! तुम तो अपने शरीर पर बहुत ध्यान देती हो। शिल्पा, मुझे फ़िल्म की कहानी बताओ।	Wao! You pay attention to your body. Shilpa, tell me the story of a movie.
शिल्पा	कौन सी फ़िल्म की कहानी ?	Story of which movie?
संगीता:	जो फ़िल्म तुम और पीटर देखने गये थे।	The film that you and peter had gone to watch.
शिल्पा	अच्छा, यह एक दिलचस्प फ़िल्म थी। इस फ़िल्म में एक लड़का एक लड़की से प्यार करता है। मगर लड़की किसी और लड़के से प्यार करती है। बाद में उसे पता चलता है कि वह लड़का जिससे वह प्यार करती है वह अच्छा आदमी नहीं है। फिर वह लड़की उस लड़के के साथ शादी करती है जो उस प्यार करता है।	Okay, This was an interesting film. In this film, a boy loves a girl. But the girl loves some other boy. After a while, she learns that he is not a good man. Then she marries the boy who loves her.
संगीता:	अरे बाह ! यह तो Love triangle लगता है।	Wao! This seems like a love triangle.
शिल्पा	संगीता, मैं भी चित्रकारी करना चाहती हूँ। क्या तुम मुझे चित्रकारी करना सिखा सकती हो ?	Sangeeta, I do want to paint. Can you teach me painting?
संगीता:	हाँ बलिकूल, अगले रविवार को मेरे घर आ जाओ, हम एक साथ चित्रकारी करेंगे।	Yes, of course, come to my home on next Sunday, we will paint together.
शिल्पा	अच्छा।	Great.

Listening

[मरे शौक](#)

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

- (a) Check your vocabulary





An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1065#h5p-105>

(b) Based on the above reading/listening, make a list of Shilpa's and Sangeeta's hobbies. Additionally, ask two of your friends about their hobbies.

शौक	शिल्पा	संगीता	दोस्त १	दोस्त २
1				
2				
3				

(c) As you read/listen above how Shilpa narrated a story of a film. Please recollect a story of a movie that you have watch and write the story of that movie, then record it below and share this with your instructor for feedback.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1065#h5p-106>

धन्यवाद !

7.4 Reading/Listening 3: त्योहार



त्योहार “Festival”



Holi

Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

- (a) Please make a list of your favorite festivals.
- (b) Please make a list of things that you do on your favorite festival.
- (c) Please go online, and research about story behind your favorite Indian festival.

Reading

त्योहार

Context: Peter, Shilpa, and Hrithik talk about their favorite festivals.

शिल्पा:	पीटर, तुम्हें क्रिसमस की हार्दिक शुभकामनायें।	Peter, Merry Christmas to you.
पीटर:	धन्यवाद शिल्पा। तुम्हें भी क्रिसमस की हार्दिक शुभकामनायें। शिल्पा, क्या क्रिसमस तुम्हारा पसंदीदा त्योहार है?	Thanks Shilpa, Merry Christmas to you too. Is Christmas your favorite festival?
शिल्पा:	नहीं, मेरा पसंदीदा त्योहार दिवाली है।	No, My favorite festival is Diwali.
पीटर:	अच्छा, तुम दिवाली कैसे मनाती हो ?	Okay. How do you celebrate Diwali?
शिल्पा:	दिवाली के पहले, हम अपना घर साफ करते हैं। दिवाली की शाम, हम दीप जलाते हैं, लक्ष्मी और गणेश की पूजा करते हैं। मठाइयाँ खाते हैं और आतिशबाजी करते हैं।	Before Diwali, we clean our homes. On the evening on Diwali, we lit clay lamp and worship Lakshmi and Ganesha. We eat sweets, and do fireworks.
पीटर:	मुझे भारतीय मठाइयाँ बहुत पसंद हैं। शिल्पा, मेरा एक सवाल है। भारतीय दिवाली क्यों मनाते हैं?	I like Indian sweets very much. Shilpa, I have a question. Why do Indian celebrate Diwali?
शिल्पा:	ऐसा माना जाता है कि, भगवान राम रावण को मार कर जब अयोध्या आये थे तब अयोध्या के लोगों ने उनका स्वागत दीप जलाकर किया था उसी दिन से हम दिवाली मनाते हैं। पीटर भाई, ईसाई लोग क्रिसमस क्यों मनाते हो ?	It is believed that when Lord Ram returned to Ayodhya after killing Rawan, people of Ayodhya welcomed him by lighting the clay lamps. Since that day, we celebrate Diwali. Brother Peter, why do Christians celebrate Christmas.
पीटर:	यह मना जाता है कि इस दिन ईसा मसीह का जन्म हुआ था। ऋतकि भाई, तुम्हारा पसंदीदा त्योहार कौन सा है?	It is believed that Jesus Christ was born on this day. Brother Hrithik, Which is your favorite festival?
ऋतकि:	मुझे तो छठ पूजा बहुत पसंद है।	I really like Chhath pooja.
पीटर :	मैं छठ पूजा के बारे में कुछ नहीं जानता। इसके बारे में मुझे कुछ बताओ, न।	I do not know anything about Chhath pooja. Please tell me about it.
ऋतकि:	छठ पूजा हिन्दुओं का एक बहुत ही पवित्र पर्व है। छठ पूजा में हम सूर्य भगवान की पूजा करते हैं।	Chhath pooja is a holy festival of Hindus. In Chhath pooja, we worship God sun.
पीटर:	क्या तुम मुझे छठ पूजा में अपने घर बुलाओगे?	Will you invite me to your home on Chhath pooja?
ऋतकि:	हाँ बिल्कुल, अगले छठ पूजा में तुम मेरे घर जरूर आना।	Yes, of course, you must come to my home on next Chhath pooja.
शिल्पा:	और मैं?	And me?
ऋतकि:	तुम्हारा भी स्वागत है।	You are also welcome.

Listening

त्योहार

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Please check your vocabulary



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1063#h5p-107>

(b) Based on the above reading/listening, please make a list of favorite festival of Shilpa and Hritik. Please also ask at least three of your friends about their favorite festivals and complete the following table.

	ऋतकि	शलिपा	दोस्त १	दोस्त २	दोस्त ३
त्योहार का नाम					

(c) Please name your favorite festival. Write at least 5 sentences about what you do on that day. Additionally, write 5 sentences explaining why that festival is celebrated. After writing about your favorite festival, please record yourself here and share this with your instructor for her/his feedback.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1063#h5p-108>

धन्यवाद !

7.5 Study Abroad



Study Abroad Reading/Listening Activity



"Amer fort" by iamrawat is licensed under CC BY-NC-SA 2.0.

Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Please make a list of places where you want to travel in America and in India.

	भारत में, आप कहाँ-कहाँ यात्रा करना चाहते हैं? “What are the places you want to tour in India?”	अमेरिका में, आप कहाँ-कहाँ यात्रा करना चाहते हैं? “What are the places you want to tour in America?”
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		

(b) As you have planned to go five places in India, please make a list of 15-20 items in Hindi that you think you would need to pack to visit these places.

(c) As you have decided to go to five different places in India, please briefly (1-3 sentences) write why you want to visit each place.

	जगह का नाम “Name of the place”	आप वहाँ क्यों जाना चाहते/चाहती हैं? “Why do you want to go there?”
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		

Reading

Context: Jen is talking to her mother Karen on phone. Karen is planning to come to India and go to places in India with her daughter Jen. Jen is explaining her plans.

जन:	नमस्ते माँ, तुम कैसे हो और अभी क्या कर रही हो ?	Hello mother, how are you and what are you doing right now?
करने:	नमस्ते बेटे, मैं ठीक हूँ और अभी अपना सामान पैक कर रही हूँ। मैं कल सुबह के हवाई जहाज से भारत आ रही हूँ। तुम कैसे हो और क्या कर रही हो?	Hello daughter, I am fine and I am packing right now. I am coming to India by morning flight tomorrow. How are you and what are you doing?
जन:	मैं भी अच्छी हूँ माँ। मैं हमारी यात्रा की योजना बना रही हूँ।	I am well too, mother. I am making our travel plan.
करने:	मैं भी भारत-यात्रा के लिए बहुत उत्साहित हूँ। मुझे यात्रा की योजना के बारे में बताओ।	I am also very excited about India tour. Tell me about the travel plan.
जन:	ठीक है। मैं तुम से दिल्ली अन्तराष्ट्रीय हवाई अड्डे पर मिलूँगी। हम दिल्ली में दो दिन रुकेंगे और दिल्ली में लाल क़िला और कुतुबमीनार देखेंगे।	Okay. I will meet you at the international airport in Delhi. We will stay in Delhi for two days and will visit Red fort and Qutub minar.
करने:	क्या हम जामा मस्जिद भी देखेंगे ?	Will we visit Jama masjid too?
जन:	जी हाँ, जामा मस्जिद, लाल क़िला के पास ही है।	Yes, Jama masjid is near by the red fort.
करने:	बहुत अच्छा। उसके बाद हम कहाँ जायेंगे ?	Very well. Where will we go after that?
जन:	दिल्ली के बाद हम जयपुर और उदयपुर जायेंगे। जयपुर और उदयपुर में हम बहुत सारे क़िले देखेंगे, राजस्थानी खाना खायेंगे और खरीदारी भी करेंगे।	After Delhi, we will go to Jaipur and Udaypur. In Jaipur and Udaypur, we will visit many forts, eat Rajasthani food, and do shopping too.
करने:	मैंने सुना है कि राजस्थानी हस्तशिल्प बहुत मशहूर है।	I have heard that Rajasthani handicraft is very famous.
जन:	हाँ माँ, हम राजस्थान से पंजाब जायेंगे और बाघा बॉर्डर पर हिन्दुस्तानी और पाकिस्तानी सैनिकों का परेड देखेंगे।	Yes mother, we will go to Punjab from Rajasthan and will see a parade by Indian and Pakistani soldiers
करने:	अरे वाह ! मैंने सुना है कि वह परेड बहुत नाटकीय है।	Wao! I have heard that the parade is very dramatic.
जन:	हाँ, हमें बहुत मजा आयेगा। उसके बाद हम अमृतसर में गोल्डन टेम्पल देखेंगे और दिल्ली वापस आयेंगे।	Yes, we will have so much fun. After that we will go to visit golden temple in Amritsar and will return to Delhi.
करने:	यह तो बहुत अच्छी योजना है। तुम्हें अमेरिका से कुछ चाहिए ?	This is such a good plan. Do you need anything from America?
जन:	नहीं माँ, मुझे कुछ नहीं चाहिए। मगर हाँ, तुम गर्म कपड़े मत लाना। आजकल हिन्दुस्तान में गर्मी का मौसम है।	No mother, I do not need anything. But, please do not bring warm clothes. It is summer season in India these days.
करने:	ठीक है बेटे, मैं तुमसे दिल्ली हवाई अड्डे पर मिलूँगी।	Okay daughter, I will see you at Delhi airport.

Listening

[Study Abroad](#)

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Please check your vocabulary



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1069#h5p-109>

(b) Based on the above reading/listening, please make a list of places Jen and Karen are planning to visit in India.

(c) Imagine that you are going for a two weeks trip in India with your best friend. Please write a detailed plan in Hindi and record your plan below. [Hint: please use future tense.]



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1069#h5p-110>

धन्यवाद !

7.6 Grammar: Tense and Aspect



Tense

Instructor Video: [Tense and Aspect](#)

Tense is a time of an action. In all languages, tense is categorized in three types, namely, (a) present tense, (b) past tense, and (c) future tense.

In Hindi, tense is marked with auxiliary verbs and/or morphemes attached to the verb stem, as shown below.

Past tense	Present tense	Future tense
Auxiliary verbs: था, थे, थी, थीं	Auxiliary verbs: हूँ, हो, है, हैं	Auxiliary verbs: होगा, होंगे, होगी, होंगी
<p>Examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> कल बारिश हो रही थी “It was raining yesterday.” पछिले साल, मैं भारत गया था “I had gone to India last year.” 	<p>Examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> आज बारिश हो रही है “It is raining today.” मैं भारत जा रहा हूँ “I am going to India.” 	<p>Examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> कल बारिश होगी “It will rain tomorrow.” अगले साल, मैं भारत जाऊँगा “I will go to India next year.”

Aspect

Aspect shows the manner of an action. Grammatical aspects are categorized in two types, namely, (a) imperfective aspect, and (b) perfective aspect. Imperfective aspect shows that the action is not completed. Perfective aspect shows that the action is complete.

Imperfective aspect is further categorized in two types, namely, (a) habitual and (b) progressive/continuous.

All grammatical aspects in Hindi are marked as morphemes with verb stem, as shown below.

Imperfective Aspect		Perfective Aspect
Habitual	Progressive/Continuous	
Morphemes: -ता, -ते, -ती	रहा, रहे, रही	-आ, -ए, -ई, -ई
<p>Examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> मैं किताब पढ़ता हूँ। “I read a book.” सीता क्रिकेट खेलती है। “Sita plays cricket.” लड़के कमरा साफ़ करते हैं। “Boys clean a room.” 	<p>Examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> मैं किताब पढ़ रहा हूँ। “I am reading a book.” सीता क्रिकेट खेल रही है। “Sita is playing cricket.” लड़के कमरा साफ़ कर रहे हैं। “Boys are cleaning a room.” 	<p>Examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> मैंने किताब पढ़ी। “I read a book.” सीता ने क्रिकेट खेला। “Sita played cricket.” लड़कों ने कमरा साफ़ किया। “Boys cleaned a room.”

Activity

Please read these sentences carefully and identify the tense and aspect.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1089#h5p-111>

धन्यवाद !

7.7 Grammar: The present and past habitual tense



The Present and Past Habitual Tense Video

Instructor Video: [The Present and Past Habitual Tense](#)

Structure

Verb stem	Habitual aspect marker	Present tense	Past tense
खा, जा	-ता/-ते/-ती	हूँ, हो, है, हैं	था, थे, थी, थीं
Example:		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> मैं आम खाता हूँ। "I eat mangoes." वह आठ बजे स्कूल जाता है। "He goes to school at 8 o'clock." 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> मैं आम खाता था। "I used to eat mangoes." वह आठ बजे स्कूल जाता था। "He used to go to school at 8 o'clock."

Use of Habitual Aspect Marker with Different Subjects

Habitual markers (-ता, -ते, -ती) are used based on the number, person and gender features of the agreeing subject.

Person	Singular Pronoun	Habitual markers Masculine/Feminine	Plural pronoun	Habitual markers Masculine/Feminine
1st	मैं "I"	-ता/-ती	हम "We"	-ते/-ती
2nd	तू "You"	-ता/-ती		NA
	तुम "You"	-ते/-ती	तुम (लोग) "You"	-ते/-ती
	आप "You"	-ते/-ती	आप (लोग) "You"	-ते/-ती
3rd	यह/वह "S/he," and singular noun	-ता/-ती	ये/वे "They," and plural nouns	-ते/-ती

Note: When subject of a sentence is of mixed gender please use plural masculine aspect marker.

Negation of Habitual Aspect

In order to change habitual aspect sentences in negative, we use the word **नहीं** right before the verb. When habitual sentences appear in negative, generally, the verb “to be” in present (**हूँ, हो, है, हैं**) are dropped. However, in the past form of verb “to be” (**था, थे, थी, थीं**) are not dropped.

Examples:

- लड़कियाँ फुटबॉल खेलती हैं। “Girls play football.”
- लड़कियाँ फुटबॉल नहीं खेलती। “Girls do not play football.”
- आप हर दिन अपना कमरा साफ करते थे। “You used to clean your room everyday.”
- आप हर दिन अपना कमरा साफ नहीं करते थे। “You used not to clean your room everyday.”

Note: Please notice the extra nasal dot in negative sentences with subject लड़कियाँ “girls.” As we drop the verb “to be,” the dot indicates the plural feminine subject in contrast to singular feminine subject.

Uses of Habitual Aspect

(a) To express routine actions

Examples:

- मैं चार बजे जागता हूँ। “I get up at 4 o'clock.”
- मैं पांच बजे चाय पीता हूँ। “I drink tea at 5 o'clock.”
- मैं आठ बजे स्कूल जाता हूँ। “I go to school at 8 o'clock.”

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative and past tense.

	Examples	Negative	Past tense
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			

(b) To express habitual actions

Examples:

- सीता किताबें पढ़ती है। “Sita reads books.”
- राहुल गिटार बजाता है। “Rahul plays guitar.”
- ऋतिक सिगरेट पीता है। “Hrithik smokes.”

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative and past tense.

	Examples	Negative	Past tense
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			

(c) To express permanent actions

Examples:

- पीटर मशिगिन में रहता है। "Peter lives in Michigan."
- जेन यहाँ काम करती है। "Jen works here."
- मैं अपने शिक्षक का आदर करता हूँ। "I respect my teacher."

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative and past tense.

	Examples	Negative	Past tense
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			

(d) To express general/universal truth.

Examples:

- पृथ्वी सूर्य की परिक्रमा करती है। "The earth revolves around the sun."
- आम तौर से, गुलाब लाल होते हैं। "Generally, roses are red."
- मशिगिन में, बर्फ़बारी होती है। "It snows in Michigan."

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative and past tense.

	Examples	Negative	Past tense
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			

(e) To narrate a story and to express series of events:

When narrating a story, background information is generally expressed using habitual (imperfective aspect) construction. Whereas, the foreground information is expressed using perfective aspect. Habitual construction (background information) in the story below is highlighted.

Example:

- एक जंगल में एक शेर रहता था। उसी जंगल में, एक चूहा भी रहता था। एक दिन शेर चूहे से कहता कि मैं तुम्हें खा जाऊँगा। चूहा कहता है “मुझे मत खाइए।” एक दिन शिकारी शेर को जाल में फँसाता है तब चूहा जाल काटता है। इस तरह चूहा शेर की मदद करता है।
- “A lion lived in a forest. In the same forest, a mouse also lived. One day the lion says to the rats that I will eat you. The Rat says “please don’t eat me.” One day the hunter traps the lion into the net then the rat bites the net. This is how the rat helps the lion.”

(f) To express impersonal sentences

Examples:

- लोग कहते हैं कि... “People say that...”
- (आप) हिन्दी में “flower” कैसे कहते हैं? How do you say “flower” in Hindi.
- यहाँ अच्छी चाय मिलाती है। Good tea is available here.

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative and past tense.

	Examples	Negative	Past tense
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			

(g) To express immediate future action by adding adverbs like अभी “right away,” and चलिए “let’s.”

Examples:

- मैं अभी आती हूँ। “I will come right away.”
- चलिए, एक फ़िल्म देखते हैं। “Let’s watch a film.”

- रोओ मत, माँ अभी तुम्हें खाना देती है। “Don’t cry, mother will give you food right away.”

Uses of the Past Habitual Tense

(a) The past habitual tense is generally used to express past habit, routine, permanent actions.

Examples:

- मैं पछिले साल दस बजे स्कूल जाता था। “I used to go to school at 10 o’clock last year.”
- आप हिन्दुस्तान में कहाँ रहती थीं? “Where used you to live in India?”
- पछिले महीने तक, मेरा भाई हर दिन मुझ से बात करता था। “My brother used to talk to me everyday till last month.”

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative and past tense.

	Examples	Negative	Past tense
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			

Activities

(a) Please choose the correct form of habitual aspect marker based on the subject of the sentence.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1096#h5p-113>

(b) Please write your daily routine of this semester/year. After writing your daily routine compare it with last semester/year. [Hint: Please use present habitual for current daily routine, and use past habitual for last semester/year]

(c) Please ask your friends about their hobbies and enlist them here. [Hint: Use आप खाली समय में क्या करते/करती हैं? “What do you do in your free time?” to ask their hobbies.]

(d) Please watch a short film, and write the story in Hindi. After writing, please record yourself here and share your story with the instructor/any native speaker for the feedback.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1096#h5p-112>

धन्यवाद !

7.8 The Present and Past Progressive Tense



The Present and Past Progressive Tense Video

Instructor Video: [The Present and Past Progressive Tense](#)

Structure

Verb stem	Progressive aspect marker	Present tense	Past tense
खा, जा	रहा, रहे रही	हूँ, हो, है, हैं	था, थे, थी, थीं
Example:		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> मैं काम कर रहा हूँ “I am working.” वह स्कूल जा रहा है “He is going to school.” 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> मैं काम कर रहा था “I was working.” वह स्कूल जा रहा था “He was going to school.”

Use of Progressive Aspect Marker with Different Subjects

Progressive markers (रहा, रहे, रही) are used based on the number, person and gender features of the agreeing subject.

Person	Singular Pronoun	Habitual markers Masculine/Feminine	Plural pronoun	Habitual markers Masculine/Feminine
1st	मैं “I”	रहा/रही	हम “We”	रहे/रही
2nd	तू “You”	रहा/रही		NA
	तुम “You”	रहे/रही	तुम (लोग) “You”	रहे/रही
	आप “You”	रहे/रही	आप (लोग) “You”	रहे/रही
3rd	यह/वह “S/he,” and singular noun	रहा/रही	ये/वे “They,” and plural nouns	रहे/रही

Note: When subject of a sentence is of mixed gender please use plural masculine aspect marker.

Negation of Progressive Aspect

In order to change progressive aspect sentences in negative, we use the word **नहीं** right before the verb. When progressive sentences appear in negative, generally, the verb “to be” in present (**हूँ, हो, है, हैं**) are dropped, but not in the past (**था, थे, थी, थीं**). Negative of past tense keeps the past form of the verb “to be”

Examples:

- लड़कियाँ फुटबॉल खेल रही हैं। “Girls are playing football.”
- लड़कियाँ फुटबॉल नहीं खेल रही। “Girls are not playing football.”
- आप अपना कमरा साफ कर रहे थे। “You were cleaning your room.”
- आप अपना कमरा साफ नहीं कर रहे थे। “You were not cleaning your room.”

Note: Please notice the extra nasal dot “रही” in negative sentences with subject लड़कियाँ “girls.” As we drop the verb “to be,” the dot indicates the plural feminine subject in contrast to singular feminine subject.

Uses of Progressive Aspect

(a) To express action happening at the time of speaking.

Examples:

- बारिश हो रही है। “It is raining.”
- सब लोग सो रहे हैं। “Everyone is sleeping.”
- सीता और गीता एक फ़िल्म देख रही थीं। “Sita and Geeta were watching a film.”

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative and past tense.

	Examples	Negative	Past tense
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			

(b) To express temporary action. Generally, adverbs like, **आजकल** “these days,” and **अभी** “right now” are used.

Examples:

- सीता अभी किताब पढ़ रही है। “Sita is reading a book right now.”
- राहुल आजकल गिटार बजा रहा है। “Rahul is playing a guitar these days.”
- ऋतिक अमेरिका में रह रहा था। “Hrithik was living/staying in America.”

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative and past tense.

	Examples	Negative	Past tense
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			

(c) To express planned future action. The sentences must have future adverbs of time.

Examples:

- पीटर अगले महीने हिन्दुस्तान जा रहा है। "Peter is going to India next month."
- जेन कल काम कर रही है। "Jen is working tomorrow."
- मैं अगले हफ्ते एक फ़िल्म देख रही हूँ। "I am watching a film next week."

Note: To express planned future action using progressive aspect is only possible in present tense. Past tense of progressive aspect cannot express planned future action.

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative and past tense.

	Examples	Negative	Past tense
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			

Activities

(a) Please choose the correct progressive aspect markers based on the subject of the sentence.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=110#h5p-114>

(b) Please write 5 sentences explaining what you were doing last weekend.

1.	पछिले सप्ताहांत, मै _____ था/थी।
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	

(c) Please write 5 sentences explaining what you are doing next weekend.

1.	अगले सप्ताहांत, मै _____ हूँ।
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	

धन्यवाद !

7.9 Grammar: Simple Future Tense



Simple Future Tense Video

Lecture: [The Simple Future Tense](#)

Structure

Verb stem + future marker

Use of Future Markers with Different Subjects

Future markers are used based on the number, person and gender features of the agreeing subject.

Person	Singular Pronoun	Habitual markers Masculine/Feminine	Plural pronoun	Habitual markers Masculine/Feminine
1st	मैं "I"	-ऊँगा/-ऊँगी	हम "We"	-एंगे/-एंगी
2nd	तू "You"	-एगा/-एगी		NA
	तुम "You"	-ओगे/-ओगी	तुम (लोग) "You"	-ओगे/-ओगी
	आप "You"	-एंगे/-एंगी	आप (लोग) "You"	-एंगे/-एंगी
3rd	यह/वह "S/he," and singular noun	-एगा/-एगी	ये/वे "They," and plural nouns	-एंगे/-एंगी

Note:

- When subject of a sentence is of mixed gender please use plural masculine aspect marker.
- When the verb stem ends in consonant then vowels of the aspect markers are marked as dependent vowels. For example: बोलूँगी, पढ़ेगा, खेलेंगे, बोलोगी, etc.
- When the verb stem ends in vowel then the aspect markers ऊँगा/ऊँगी and ओगे/ओगी are just attached. For example: जाऊँगी, आओगे, खाऊँगा, etc.
- When the verb stem ends in vowel then the aspect markers एगा/एगी and एंगे/एंगी are attached using a semi-consonant य. For example: जायगा, आयेंगी, खायगी, etc.

Negation of Progressive Aspect

In order to change progressive aspect sentences in negative, we use the word **नहीं** right before the verb.

Examples:

- लड़कियाँ फुटबॉल खेलेंगी | “Girls will play football.”
- लड़कियाँ फुटबॉल नहीं खेलेंगी | “Girls will not play football.”
- आप अपना कमरा साफ करेंगे | “You will clean your room.”
- आप अपना कमरा साफ नहीं करेंगे | “You will not clean your room.”

Uses of Future Tense

(a) To express future actions.

Examples:

- कल बारिश होगी | “It will rain tomorrow.”
- सब लोग घर जायेंगे | “Everyone will go home.”
- सीता और गीता एक फ़िल्म देखेंगी | “Sita and Geeta will watch a film.”

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative too.

	Examples	Negative
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		

(b) To express assumption/presumption

Examples:

- शायद कल बर्फ़बारी होगी | “Perhaps, it will snow tomorrow.”
- अगले साल, मैं हिन्दुस्तान जाऊँगी | “Next year, I will go to India.”
- कल सीता और गीता मुझसे मिलेंगी | “Sita and Geeta will meet me tomorrow.”

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative too.

	Examples	Negative
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		

Activities

(a) Please choose the correct form of future aspect markers based on the subject of the sentence.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1124#h5p-115>

धन्यवाद !

7.10 Cultural Notes and Extra/ Optional Online Materials

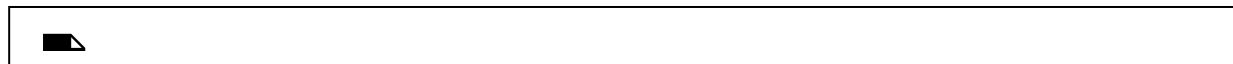


Cultural Notes

	Topics	Explanation
1.	Food habits	In Hindi, there is no separate words for lunch and dinner. खाना “food” is used for both lunch and dinner. Typically, for both lunch and dinner, people eat full meal.
2.	चाय	चाय is one of the drink that Indian love to drink in the morning and in the evening with snacks. Additionally, चाय is served in office often and it is a drink for a break between work/study.
3.	क्या चल रहा है?	क्या चल रहा है? Literally, it means “what is moving?” But this is used to express “What’s up?” or “What is going on?”
4.	Folk tales	Each Indian festival has some sort of folk tale behind it. Mostly, it is based on religion. For example, diwali is celebrated because, it is assumed that Lord Ram returned to Ayodhya with his wife Sita and brother Lakshaman after killing the devil king Rawan. To be culturally appropriate, you should learn the folk tales behind each festivals Indian celebrates.
5.	School and Office hours.	In America, people generally go to work at 8 AM. In India and South Asia, the office starts at 10 AM. This gives enough time in the morning for morning rituals such as yoga, making break-fast, eating breakfast, and packing lunch.
6.	Daily Routine	When you ask about daily routine to Indian and South Asian, they may just talk about their work/study. They may say how long they work and study.

Extra/Optional Online Materials

History of Chai:





One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1141#oembed-1>

Indian Mom Daily Routine:



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1141#oembed-2>

Holi's Folk Tale:



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1141#oembed-3>

दशहरा की कहानी:



One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1141#oembed-4>

धन्यवाद !

CHAPTER 8: TALKING ABOUT THE PAST AND COMPLETED ACTIONS



“Looking Across Generations in Hyderabad” by United Nations Photo is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0.

Goals of this Chapter

- You will learn vocabulary related to travelling.
- You will learn how to write a letter in Hindi.
- You will learn how to express completed actions.
- You will learn how to form long sentences using “kar” construction.
- You will learn how to express uncertain future plans, blessings, curses, and good/bad wishes.

धन्यवाद !

8.1 Review of Chapter 7



Vocabulary



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1353#h5p-116>

Reading and Grammar



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1353#h5p-117>

Answer the following questions based on on the above reading.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1353#h5p-118>

धन्यवाद !

8.2 Reading/Listening 1: छुट्टियों के बाद



छुट्टियों के बाद “After the vacation”



Taj Mahal, Agra, India

Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

- (a) Please recollect the memories of your last trip and make a list of the places you went, food that you ate, and things that you did.
 (b) Please share your vacation details with your friend, and ask her/his.

Reading

Context: Hritik, Shilpa, and Peter meet in school after the summer vacation.

पीटर:	नमस्ते शिल्पा, तम कैसे हो ?	Hello Shilpa, How are you?
शिल्पा:	मैं अच्छी हूँ। तम कैसे हो?	I am well. How are you?
पीटर:	मैं भी अच्छा हूँ। तुम्हारी गर्मी की छुट्टियाँ कैसी थीं?	I, too, am well. How was your summer vacation?
शिल्पा:	मेरी गर्मी की छुट्टियाँ बहुत अच्छी थीं। मैं अपने परिवार के साथ हैदराबाद गयी थीं।	My summer vacation was very good. I went to Hyderabad with my family.
पीटर:	अरे वाह ! हैदराबाद में तुम लोगों ने क्या – क्या किया?	Oh wao! What did you do in Hyderabad?
शिल्पा:	हम लोग वहाँ एक सप्ताह रहे। हम ने शहर देखा। हम चार मीनार, गोलकुंडा फोर्ट, और रामू जी फिल्म सिटी गए। हम ने कई तरह की बिरयानियाँ खायीं। तम गर्मी की छुट्टियों में कहाँ गए और क्या – क्या किया ?	We stayed there for a week. We saw the city. We went to Char minar, Golkunda fort, and Ramu Ji film city. We ate different types of biryani. Where did you go in summer vacation and what did you do?
पीटर:	मैं अपने माता – पति के घर, गोवा गया था। मैंने उनके साथ कुछ समय बताया। मैंने घर की मरम्मत करने में उनकी मदद की।	I went to my parent's house in Goa. I spent some times with them. I help them fixing their house.
शिल्पा:	अरे वाह ! और ऋतिक तम ने गर्मी की छुट्टियों में क्या किया ?	Oh wao! and Hritik, what did you do during the summer vacation?
ऋतिक:	मैं घर पर ही था। मैंने खाना पकाना सीखा।	I was at home. I learnt how to cook.
पीटर:	अरे वाह ! यह तो बहुत अच्छी बात है। अब तो ऋतिक हमारे लिए खाना बना सकता है।	Oh wao! This is great. Now Hritik can cook food for us.
ऋतिक:	हाँ, क्यों नहीं?	Yes, why not?

Listening

छुट्टियों के बाद

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

- (a) Check your vocabulary learning:



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basic hindi/?p=1355#h5p-119>

(b) Speaking:



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basic hindi/?p=1355#h5p-120>

धन्यवाद !

8.3 Reading/Listening 2: पत्र लेखन



पत्र लेखन “Letter writing”



Pre-Reading/Listening Activity

(a) In a group, please share your letter writing experience. Please also share who you want to write a letter today, and what you want to write about.

(b) In a group, please discuss how mode of communication changes due to new technological developments like facebook, twitter, and emails, etc.

(c) Please learn the following vocabulary

दोस्त <i>n.m./f.</i>	Friend	x की तरफ <i>pp.</i>	Towards X
आशा <i>n.f.</i>	Hope	तेजी से <i>adv.</i>	Fast
वशिष्ट <i>adj.</i>	Special	दौड़ना <i>v.i.</i>	To run
कारण <i>n.m.</i>	Reason	बचाना <i>v.t.</i>	To save
वापस <i>adv.</i>	Return	उठाना <i>v.t.</i>	To lift
बताना <i>v.i.</i>	To spend	भागना <i>v.i.</i>	To run away
बाहर <i>adj.</i>	Out	पैर <i>n.m.</i>	Leg
घूमना <i>v.i.</i>	To roam around	फंसना <i>v.t.</i>	To be stuck
पछिला <i>adj.</i>	Last	गरिना <i>v.i.</i>	To fall
चचेरी बहन <i>n.f.</i>	Paternal uncle's daughter	पडना <i>v.i.</i>	To lie down
शादी <i>n.f.</i>	Marriage	सुरक्षित <i>adj.</i>	Safe
खुश <i>adj.</i>	Happy	दर्द <i>n.m.</i>	Pain
तैयारी <i>n.f.</i>	Preparation	महशूस करना <i>v.t.</i>	To feel
धूम-धाम <i>adj.</i>	Grandeur	अस्पताल <i>n.m.</i>	Hospital
खरीदना <i>v.t.</i>	To buy	पहुँचना <i>v.t.</i>	To arrive
गोलगप्पा <i>n.m.</i>	An Indian snacks	हड्डी <i>n.f.</i>	Bone
देखना <i>v.t.</i>	To see	टूटना <i>v.i.</i>	Break
छोटा <i>adj.</i>	Small	इलाज करना <i>v.t.</i>	To treatment
बच्चा <i>n.m.</i>	Child	आराम <i>n.m.</i>	Rest
सड़क <i>n.f.</i>	Road	हृदयित देना <i>v.t.</i>	To instruct
पार करना <i>v.t.</i>	To cross	ख्याल रखना <i>v.t.</i>	To take care

Reading

कानपुर

१२ जनवरी, २०२१

प्रिय दोस्त शिल्पा, पीटर, और ऋतिक,

नमस्ते!

आशा है कि तुम लोग ठीक होगे, और तुम्हारी गर्मी की छुट्टियाँ अच्छी रही होगी। पत्र लिखने का विशेष कारण यह है कि मैं इस सेमेस्टर में स्कूल वापस नहीं आ सकती।

मैं गर्मी की छुट्टी में अपने घर कानपुर आयी थी। मैं अपने परिवार के साथ अच्छा समय बति रही थी। हम लोगों ने बहुत अच्छा खाना खाया, और कई बार बाहर घूमने भी गये। पछिले सप्ताह, मेरी एक चचेरी बहन की शादी थी और हम सब लोग बहुत खुश थे। पूरा परिवार एक साथ था और हम शादी की तैयारी बहुत धूम-धाम से कर रहे थे। शादी के दो दिन पहले, मैं कुछ कपड़े खरीदने बाजार गयी थी। खरीदारी करके मैं एक गोलगप्पे वाले के पास गोलगप्पे खा रही थी। मैंने देखा की एक छोटा बच्चा सड़क पार कर रहा है और एक मोटर साइकिल उसकी तरफ तेजी से आ रही है। मैं दौड़ कर उसे बचाने गयी। मैं बच्चे को उठाके भागी, मगर मेरा पैर किसी चीज से फँस गया और मैं गिर पड़ी। हम दोनों सड़क के किनारे पड़े थे। बच्चा सुरुक्षित था, मगर मैंने अपने पैर में दर्द महसूस किया। बाद में, जब मैं अस्पताल पहुँची तो पता लगा कि मेरे दाहिने पैर की हड्डी टूट गयी है। डॉक्टर ने मेरा इलाज किया और तीन महीने आराम की हदियत दी। अब मैं घर पर हूँ और अच्छी हूँ। मैंने अध्यापक जी को भी पत्र लिखा है। अब मैं तुम लोगों से अगले सेमेस्टर में मिलूँगी।

अच्छा, अब मैं ज्यादा क्या लिखूँ। तुम लोग अपना खयाल रखना और मुझे पत्र लिखते रहना।

तुम्हारी दोस्त,
बदिया

Listening

पत्र लेखन

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Please check your vocabulary



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1357#h5p-121>

(b) Please answer the following questions based on the above letter.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1357#h5p-122>

(c) Please follow the patten of the above letter and write a letter to your friend explaining one recent incident that you witnessed.

धन्यवाद !

8.4 Reading/Listening 3: शुभकामनाएँ



शुभकामनाएँ “Well Wishes”



Cute kids on the occasion India independence day.

Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

- (a) Please search and make a list of national holidays that are celebrated in India and in America.
- (b) Please discuss how you wish each other on national holidays and try to learn those wishes in Hindi.

(c) Please learn the following vocabulary

स्वतंत्रता दिवस <i>n.m.</i>	Independence day	क्योंकि <i>conj.</i>	Because
हार्दिक <i>adj.</i>	Hearty	राष्ट्रीय <i>adj.</i>	National
शुभकामनाएँ <i>n.f.</i>	Congratulations	त्योहार <i>n.m.</i>	Festival
मनाना <i>v.t.</i>	To celebrate	जगह <i>n.f.</i>	Place
कुछ <i>pron., adj., & adv.</i>	a few/some	प्रवेश <i>n.m.</i>	Entry
ऐतिहासिक <i>adj.</i>	Historical	निःशुल्क <i>adj.</i>	Free
स्थान <i>n.m.</i>	Place	क्षेत्रीय <i>adj.</i>	Regional
शायद <i>adv.</i>	Perhaps	गणतंत्रता दिवस <i>n.m.</i>	Republic day
बताना <i>v.t.</i>	To tell	गाँधी जयन्ती <i>n.f.</i>	Gandhi's birthday
कोई <i>pron. & adj.</i>	Someone	खुशी <i>adj.</i>	Happiness
योजना <i>n.f.</i>	Plan	जन्मदिन <i>n.m.</i>	Birthday
आराम करना <i>v.t.</i>	To rest	मुबारक <i>adj.</i>	Congratulations

Reading

शुभकामनाएँ “Well Wishes”

Context: Hritik, Vidya, and Peter are talking on the independence day about national holidays in India.

पीटर:	नमस्ते ऋतिक, स्वतंत्रता दविस की हार्दकि शुभकामनाएँ!	Hello Hritik, happy independence day!
ऋतिक:	धन्यवाद पीटर भाई तुम्हें भी स्वतंत्रता दविस की हार्दकि शुभकामनाएँ! तुम स्वतंत्रता दविस कैसे मनाओगे?	Thanks brother Peter. Happy independence day to you too! How will you celebrate the independence day?
पीटर:	मैं अभी इंडिया गेट से स्वतंत्रता दविस का परेड देख कर आया हूँ। इसके बाद मैं और मेरे कुछ दोस्त दल्लि की ऐतिहासिक स्थान देखने जायेंगे। उसके बाद हम शायद बाहर खाना खाएँ। तुम क्या करोगे?	I am just coming from India gate after watching independence day's parade. After this, Me and a few of my friends will go to visit some historical places. After that, perhaps, we might eat out. What will you do?
ऋतिक:	क्या बताऊँ? मेरी कोई योजना नहीं है। शायद, मैं घर जाके सोऊँ।	What to tell? I have no plans. Perhaps, I might go home and sleep.
पीटर:	अगर तुम चाहो तो हमारे साथ चल सकते हो।	If you want you can come with us.
ऋतिक:	नहीं दोस्त, मैं आज आराम करूँगा। मगर यह तो बताओ कितने लोग आज ऐतिहासिक स्थान देखने क्यों जा रहे हो?	No friend, I will rest today. But tell me why you all are going to visit historical places today.
पीटर:	क्योंकि हर राष्ट्रीय त्योहार में इन जगहों पर प्रवेश नि:शुल्क होता है।	Because entry is free at all these places on national festival/holidays.
ऋतिक:	अरे वाह! इंडिया में और कौन – कौन से राष्ट्रीय त्योहार हैं?	Oh Wao! What are the other national festivals in India.
पीटर:	हिन्दुस्तान में कई क्षेत्रीय त्योहार हैं, मगर राष्ट्रीय त्योहार सिर्फ़ तीन हैं – स्वतंत्रता दविस (15 अगस्त), गणतंत्रता दविस (26 जनवरी), और गाँधी जयन्ती (2 अक्टूबर)।	There are many regional festival/holiday, but there are only three national festivals/holidays – independence day (15 August), republic day (26 January), and Gandhi's birthday (2nd October).
ऋतिक:	बहुत अच्छा! शायद, मैं भी 2 अक्टूबर को इन जगहों पर जाऊँ।	Very well! Perhaps, I too will go to these places on 2nd October.
पीटर:	वदिया, आज तुम उदास क्यों लग रही हो? क्या तुम्हें स्वतंत्रता दविस की खुशी नहीं है?	Vidya, why are you looking sad today? Are you not happy on independence day?
वदिया:	नहीं नहीं, ऐसी कोई बात नहीं है। मगर आज मेरा जन्मदिन भी है और सब मुझे स्वतंत्रता दविस की शुभकामनाएँ दे रहे हैं, जन्मदिन की नहीं।	No No, it is not like that. But today is my birthday too, and every one is wishing me happy independence day, and not happy birthday.
ऋतिक:	आज तुम्हारा जन्मदिन है? जन्मदिन की हार्दकि शुभकामनाएँ वदिया! चलो आज हम सब तुम्हारा जन्मदिन मनायेंगे।	Today is your birthday? Happy birthday Vidya! Let's celebrate your birthday together.
पीटर:	जन्मदिन मुबारक हो, वदिया!	Happy birthday Vidya!
वदिया:	धन्यवाद! तुम लोगों को भी स्वतंत्रता दविस की शुभकामनाएँ।	Thanks! Happy independence day to you all.

Listening

शुभकामनाएँ

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Check your vocabulary

--



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1359#h5p-123>

(b) Please answer the following questions:



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1359#h5p-124>

(c) Writing/Speaking



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1359#h5p-125>

धन्यवाद !

8.5 Study Abroad



Study Abroad Reading/Listening Activity



Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) In a group, please discuss your experience of study abroad. If you have not participated in any study abroad program then please discuss where you want to go and what you are planning to do to participate in your dream study abroad.

(b) In a group, please discuss the importance of study abroad in your overall education at the college level. Please make a list of 7-10 benefits. Additionally, if in the discussion some negative point comes up please also list them.

(c) Please learn the following vocabulary

आदरणीय <i>adj.</i>	Respected	भाग्यशाली <i>adj.</i>	Fortunate	आकर्षित करना <i>v.t.</i>	To attract
माँ <i>n.f.</i>	Mother	x के साथ <i>pp.</i>	With x	राज्य <i>n.m.</i>	State
आशा <i>n.f.</i>	Hope	रहना <i>v.i.</i>	To stay	अलग <i>adj.</i>	Different/ Separate
कुशलता <i>n.f.</i>	Well, efficient	अवसर मलिन <i>v.i.</i>	To get an opportunity	अनोखी <i>adj.</i>	Unique
आगे <i>adv.</i>	Ahead	मदद करना <i>v.t.</i>	To help	मानना <i>v.t.</i>	To suppose/ To agree
पत्र <i>n.m.</i>	Letter	छोड़ना <i>v.t.</i>	To leave	देश <i>n.m.</i>	Country
वशिष्ट <i>adj.</i>	Special	थोड़ा <i>adj.</i>	A little	आम तौर से/पर <i>adv.</i>	Generally
कारण <i>n.m.</i>	Reason	मशकिल <i>adj.</i>	Difficult	बहुभाषी <i>adj.</i>	Multilingual
पढ़ाई <i>n.f.</i>	Study	लगना <i>v.i.</i>	To feel/appear	मिठाई <i>n.f.</i>	Sweets
पूरा होना <i>v.i.</i>	To be completed	समझना <i>v.i.</i>	To understand	त्योहार <i>n.m.</i>	Festival
वापस <i>adv.</i>	Return	हृदय <i>n.m.</i>	Heart	कपड़ा <i>n.m.</i>	Cloth
जब तब... <i>conj.</i>	When....then...	कोशिश करना	To try	शायद <i>adv.</i>	Perhaps
पहली बार <i>adv.</i>	First time	ऐतिहासिक <i>adj.</i>	Historical	शीघ्र <i>adv.</i>	Soon
भाषा <i>n.f.</i>	Language	धार्मिक <i>adj.</i>	Religious	अवश्य <i>adv.</i>	Certainly
संस्कृति <i>n.f.</i>	Culture	पर्यटन <i>n.m.</i>	Tourism	बताना <i>v.t.</i>	To tell
x के बारे में <i>pp.</i>	About x	स्थल <i>n.m.</i>	Place	प्रणाम <i>n.m.</i>	Hello/Bye
जानकारी <i>n.f.</i>	Information	यात्रा <i>n.f.</i>	Travel	प्यार <i>n.m.</i>	Love
बहुत <i>adj.</i> & <i>adv.</i>	Much/Very	विविधता <i>n.f.</i>	Diversity	बेटी <i>n.f.</i>	Daughter

Reading

Context: Jen has complete her study abroad in India and now planning to go back to America. Her

teacher asked her to write a letter to her mother in Hindi explaining her experience and her travel plan.

दिल्ली
जनवरी १७, २०२१

आदरणीय माँ,
नमस्ते!

आशा है कि आप कुशलता से होंगी। मैं भी कुशलता से हूँ। आगे पत्र लिखने का विशेष कारण यह है कि मेरी यहाँ की पढ़ाई पूरी हो गयी है और अब मैं वापस घर आ रही हूँ।

जब मैं पहली बार भारत आयी थी तब मुझे यहाँ की भाषा और संस्कृति के बारे में कोई अधिक जानकारी नहीं थी। मगर मैं बहुत भाग्यशाली थी कि मुझे कमला जी और उनके परिवार के साथ रहने का अवसर मिला। कमला जी और उनके परिवार ने मेरी बहुत मदद की। अब उनको छोड़ कर अमेरिका आना थोड़ा मुश्किल लग रहा है। भारत में, मैंने हिन्दी की पढ़ाई की और यहाँ के संस्कृति को समझने की पूरी हृदय से कोशिश की। मैंने कई ऐतिहासिक, धार्मिक, और पर्यटन स्थलों की यात्रा भी की। भारत की विविधतायें मुझे बहुत आकर्षित करती हैं। यहाँ के हर राज्य में अनेक भाषायें बोली जाती हैं और हर राज्य की अपनी अलग और अनोखी संस्कृति है। हर राज्य मानो एक अलग देश हो। भारतीय आम तौर से बहुभाषी होते हैं। भारतीय मठाइयाँ, त्योहार, और कपड़े, मुझे बहुत पसंद हैं। शायद, मैं फिर से भारत आऊँ।

मेरी अमेरिका की हवाई टिकट २५ जनवरी की है। मैं दिल्ली से पेरिस, और पेरिस से शिकागो तक की यात्रा २० घंटे में पूरी करूँगी। मुझे बहुत खुशी है कि मैं आप से शीघ्र मिलूँगी। अगर आपको कुछ भारतीय चीजें चाहिए तो मुझे अवश्य बताइये।

आगे क्या लिखूँ पति जी को मेरा प्रणाम और छोटी बहन को प्यार।

आपकी बेटे,

जेन

Listening

जेन का पत्र

Post-Reading/Listening Activities:

(a) Please check your vocabulary



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1361#h5p-126>

(b) Please answer the following questions.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1361#h5p-127>

(c) Based on the above pre-reading/listening discussion and letter by Jen, please write a letter to your one of your family members talking about your experience of your study abroad, or place you want to go for study abroad.

धन्यवाद !

8.6 Grammar: Perfective Aspect



Perfective Aspect Video

Instructor Video: [Perfective Aspect](#)

Use of Perfective Markers with Different Subjects

Future markers are used based on the number, person and gender features of the agreeing subject.

Person	Singular Pronoun	Perfective markers Masculine/Feminine	Plural pronoun	Perfective markers Masculine/Feminine
1st	मैं "I"	-आ/ई	हम "We"	-ए/ई
2nd	तू "You"	-आ/ई		
	तुम "You"	-ए/ई	तुम (लोग) "You"	-ए/ई
	आप "You"	-ए/ई	आप (लोग) "You"	-ए/ई
3rd	यह/वह "S/he," and singular noun	-आ/ई	ये/वे "They," and plural nouns	-ए/ई

Notes:

- When subject of a sentence is of mixed gender please use plural masculine aspect marker.
- When the verb stem ends in consonant then vowels of the aspect markers are marked as dependent vowels. For example: बोला/बोली, पढ़े/पढ़ी, खेले/खेली, etc.
- When the verb stem ends in vowel then the aspect markers -आ/-ए are attached using a semi-consonant य. For example: गाया/गायी, आया/आयी, खाये/खायी, etc. Additionally, when the verb stem ends in long ii (ई), it is changes in short i (इ) before adding perfective marker, using the semi-vowel य. For example: सयिा/सयिे/सी/सी, पयिा/पयिे/पी/पी, etc.
- When the verb stem ends in long uu (ऊ), it is changes in short u (उ) before adding perfective marker, without using the semi-vowel य. For example: छुआ/छुए/छुई/छुई, etc.

Irregular Verbs in Perfective Aspect

Verb	-आ	-ए	-इ	-ई
जाना "To go"	गया	गये/गए	गयी/गई	गयी/गई
करना "To do"	किया	किये/किए	की	की
होना "To be/happen"	हुआ	हुये/हुए	हुई	हुई
लेना "To take"	लिया	लिये/लिए	ली	ली
देना "To give"	दिया	दिये/दिए	दी	दी

Perfective Aspect with Intransitive Verbs

We have learned that main verb can be classified in three categories (a) intransitive verb, (b) transitive verb, and (c) ditransitive verb. The structure of perfective aspect for the intransitive verbs is different from the structure of the transitive and the ditransitive verbs.

We also learn that intransitive verb is a verb that requires only one noun/pronoun in a complete sentence and that noun/pronoun can be either the subject or the object of that complete sentence.

Verb agreement: As the intransitive verb requires only one noun/pronoun that can act like a subject or an object, the verb agrees with subject or object, whichever is available in a sentence.

Perfective aspect with Intransitive Verbs in Three Tenses

Simple perfect	Past perfect	Present perfect	Future perfect	Remarks
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> वह दौड़ा "He ran." आप सोयी "You slept." 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> वह दौड़ा था "He had run." आप सोयी थी "You had slept." 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> वह दौड़ा है "He has run." आप सोयी हैं "You have slept." 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> वह दौड़ा होगा "He would have run." आप सोयी होंगी "You would have slept." 	Subject-Verb Agreement: वह "He" and आप "You" are subject of these sentences. You ask question "Who ran?" or "Who slept?" What you receive as an answer is an subject.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ट्रेने पहुँची "Train arrived." पत्तें गरि "Leaves fell." 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ट्रेने पहुँची थी "Train has arrived." पत्तें गरि थे "Leaves had fallen." 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ट्रेने पहुँची है "Train has arrived." पत्तें गरि हैं "Leaves have fallen." 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ट्रेने पहुँची होगी "Train would have arrived." पत्तें गरि होंगे "Leaves would have fallen." 	Object-Verb Agreement: Train and Leaves are object of these sentences. You ask question "What arrived?" or "What fell?" What you receive as an answer is an object.

Activity 1

Please write two sentences in perfective aspect using the following intransitive verbs.

Intransitive verbs	Sentences
जाना “to go”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.
आना “To come”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.
बैठना “To sit”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.
सोना “To sleep”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.
टहलना “To stroll”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.
गरिना “To fall”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.
दौड़ना “To run”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.
टूटना “To be broken”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.
रोना “To cry/weep”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.
हँसना “To laugh”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.
पहुँचना “To arrive”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.

Perfective Aspect with Transitive and Ditransitive Verbs

We have learned that transitive verb is a verb that requires two nouns/pronouns in a complete sentence where one noun/pronoun has to be the subject and other noun/pronoun has to be the object of a complete sentence.

Ditransitive verb is a verb that requires three nouns/pronouns in a complete sentence where one noun/pronoun has to be the subject and other noun/pronoun has to be the indirect object and yet another noun/pronoun has to be the direct object of a complete sentence.

Use of ने

When transitive and ditransitive verbs appears in perfective aspect, the ergative case marker -ने has come with the subject of the sentence. The subject of the transitive and ditransitive verbs in perfective aspect has to be in oblique form because of the appearance of the ergative case marker -ने.

Oblique Form of Hindi Pronouns with Ergative Case Marker -ने

Direct Pronoun	Oblique form of pronoun with -ने	Direct Pronoun	Oblique form of pronoun with -ने
मैं "I"	मैंने	हम "We"	हमने
तू "You"	तूने	तुम "You"	तुमने
आप "You"	आपने	यह "S/he, This"	इसने
वह "S/he, That"	उसने	ये "They, These"	उन्होंने
वे "They, Those"	उन्होंने	कौन "Who (singular)"	किसने
कौन "Who (Plural)"	किसने	proper noun	proper noun ने

Note:

There are a few transitive verbs that do not use the subject with ने marking. These verbs are लाना "to bring," भूलना "to forget," बोलना "to speak."

Verb-Agreement of Transitive and Ditransitive Verbs in the Perfective Aspect

Object—Verb Agreement

- As the subject of the transitive and ditransitive verbs in the perfective aspect has to have ergative case marker -ने, it blocks the subject-verb agreement. So the verb agrees with object.
- For examples:
 - मैंने खाना खाया | "I ate food." (Here खाया is agreeing with the object खाना which is masculine, singular)
 - सीता ने कपड़े खरीदे | "Sita bought clothes." (Here खरीदे is agreeing with the object कपड़े which is masculine, plural)
 - राम ने रोटी खायी | "Ram ate a bread." (Here खायी is agreeing with the object रोटी which is feminine, singular)
 - उन्होंने राधा को फूल दिया | "They gave Radha a flower." (Here दिया is agreeing with the object फूल which is masculine, singular. Please also note that the

indirect object राधा is also marked with -को, and hence cannot agree with the verb.)

- पीटर ने ऋतुकि को कतिबो दी | “Peter gave books to Hritik.” (Here दी is agreeing with the object कतिबो which is feminine, plural. Please also note that the indirect object ऋतुकि is also marked with -को, and hence cannot agree with the verb.)

Default Agreement

- When the subject and the object both are marked by case markers ने and को/से respectively, the verb of a sentence does not have any noun/pronoun to agree with. In this cases, verb will always take third person, singular, masculine perfect aspect marking which is also called default marking.
- For examples:
 - सीता ने राधा को मारा | “Sita beat up Radha.” (Here सीता and राधा both are feminine but the verb मारा is in 3rd person singular masculine form, because of the default agreement.)
 - अध्यापक ने छात्रों से कहा | “Teacher said to the students.” (Here अध्यापक is 3rd person singular honorific, and छात्रों is masculine plural, but the verb कहा is in 3rd person singular masculine form, because of the default agreement.)
 - लोगो ने चोर को पकड़ा | “People caught a thief.” (Here लोगो is 3rd person plural, and चोर is masculine singular, the verb पकड़ा is in 3rd person singular masculine form, because of the default agreement, and not because of चोर.)

Activity 2

Please write two sentences in perfective aspect using the following transitive and ditransitive verbs.

Transitive verbs	Sentences
खाना "To eat"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.
पढ़ना "To study/read"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.
लिखना "To write"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.
पूछना "To ask"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.
पढ़ाना "To teach"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.
कहना "To say"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.
बताना "To tell"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.
खोलना "To open"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.
तोड़ना "To break"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.
सोचना "To think"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.
देखना "To watch/see"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I. • 2.

Negation of Perfective Aspect

In order to change the perfective aspect sentences in negative, we use the word **नहीं** right before the main verb.

Examples:

- मैं स्कूल नहीं गया/गयी | "I did not go to school."
- हमने खाना नहीं खाया है | "We did not eat food."
- माँ ने बच्चों को मठाइयाँ नहीं दी | "Mother did not give sweets to the children."
- अध्यापक ने छात्रों को कुछ नहीं पढ़ाया था | "Teacher had taught nothing to the students."

Uses of the Perfective Aspect

Use of Simple Perfective Aspect

Unlike the habitual past tense which expresses the routine, habitual, and permanent actions in the past, the simple perfective aspect expresses one completed action. Past adverb of time can be used in a simple perfective aspect sentence.

For examples:

- कल मैं दस किलोमीटर दौड़ी | “Yesterday, I ran 10 kilometers.”
- पछिले महीने, पिता जी ने एक रेडियो खरीदा | “Last month, father bought a radio.”
- पछिले साल, वह भारत गयी | “Last year she went to India.”

Activity 3

Please write 5 Hindi sentences explaining what did you do yesterday in simple perfective aspect.

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.

Use of the Present Perfective Tense

The perfective aspect in the present tense is used to express a recently completed action, the effect of which may still be continuing. Please note that the past adverbs of time cannot be used in the present perfective tense sentences.

For examples:

- आज मैं दस किलोमीटर दौड़ी हूँ | “Today, I have run 10 kilometers.”
- आज मेरे पिता जी ने मुझे कुछ पैसे दिए हैं | “Today, my father has given me some money.”
- आज सुबह, मैंने योगा किया है | “I have done yoga this morning.”

Activity 4

Please write 5 Hindi sentences explaining what did you do today in the present perfective tense.

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.

- 5.

Use of the Past Perfective Tense

The perfective aspect in the past tense is used to express a remote past completed action, the effect of which may not be continuing at all. Please note that the past adverbs of time can be used in the past perfective tense sentences.

For examples:

- कल मैं दस किलोमीटर दौड़ी थी | “Yesterday, I had run 10 kilometers.”
- पछिल्ले महीने, मेरे पिता जी ने मुझे कुछ पैसे दिए थे | “Last month, my father had given me some money.”
- बचपन में, मैंने योगा किया था | “In childhood, I had done yoga.”

Activity 5

Please write 5 Hindi sentences explaining what did you do when you were a child (during your childhood) in the past perfective tense.

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.

Use of the Future Perfective Tense

In English, the future perfective tense is used to show a completed action by a particular time in future. In Hindi we simply use Simple future tense to express those actions.

In Hindi, the perfective aspect in the future tense is used to express assumption that some action must have been completed by a particular time.

For examples:

- अब तक बच्चे सो गए होंगे | “Children must have fallen asleep by now.”
- पिता जी १० बजे तक कार्यालय पहुँच गए होंगे | “Father must have reached the office by 10 o'clock.”
- माँ ने शाम तक खाना पका लिया होगा | “Mother must have cooked the food by the evening.”

Activity 6

Please write 5 Hindi sentences assuming what your friends must have done by now using the future perfective tense.

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.

Activity 7

Please read the following paragraphs and click on the verbs which are in the perfective aspect.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1363#h5p-128>

Activity 8



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1363#h5p-133>

Activity 9

Please read the following sentences carefully and decide if the sentences are grammatical or ungrammatical.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1363#h5p-130>

धन्यवाद !

8.7 Grammar: कर Construction



कर Construction Video

Instructor Video: [कर Construction](#)

In Hindi, कर is used to combine two or more actions which happen subsequently, and subject is the same of all these sentences. When we combine two or more verbs by using कर the aspect markers on the verbs is replaced by कर and only the last verb keeps its aspect and agreement markers. When multiple sentences are combined by using कर construction, the subject should be used just once.

For example:

- मैं सुबह उठती हूँ।
- मैं कॉफी पीती हूँ।
- मैं स्कूल जाती हूँ।
- कर construction: मैं सुबह उठकर कॉफी पीकर स्कूल जाती हूँ।

- वह स्कूल जाती है।
- वह हिन्दी पढ़ती है।
- वह खाना खाती है।
- कर construction: वह स्कूल जाकर हिन्दी पढ़कर खाना खाती है।

कर with करना Conjunct Verb

When कर comes with करना 'to do' verb the it changes in के.

For example:

- मैं काम करता हूँ।
- मैं कमरा साफ़ करता हूँ।
- मैं आराम करता हूँ।
- कर construction: मैं काम करके कमरा साफ़ करके आराम करता हूँ।

कर in Perfective Aspect

In perfective sentences, the use of -ने with subject depends on the last verb which comes with its perfective aspect and agreement markers.

For example:

- मैं उठा |
- मैंने कॉफी पी |
- मैं स्कूल गया |
- कर construction: मैं उठकर कॉफी पीकर स्कूल गया |

- मैं उठा |
- मैं स्कूल गया |
- मैंने कॉफी पी |
- कर construction: मैंने उठकर स्कूल जाकर कॉफी पी |

Activity 1

Please combine the following sentences by using कर construction:

गीता काम करती है।	+	गीता आराम करती है।	=	
तुम खाना खाओगी।	+	तुम घर जाओगी।	=	
तुम दौड़ें।	+	तुमने पानी पिया।	=	
राकेश ने खाना खाया।	+	राकेश सोया।	=	
पीटर ने गाड़ी चलायी।	+	पीटर घर आया।	=	
उसने खाना पकाया।	+	उसने हन्दी पढ़ी।	=	
हम हन्दी पढ़ेंगे।	+	हम भारत जायेंगे।	=	
उसने टी. वी. देखा।	+	वह सोने लगा।	=	
तुम यहाँ आओगी।	+	तुम क्या करोगी ?	=	
वह नहाया।	+	उसने नाश्ता किया।	=	

Activity 2

Please separate these sentences which are combined by using कर construction.

मैंने सुबह उठ कर महुँ धोया ।	१. २.	
मैं पानी पीकर दौड़ने गयी ।	१. २.	
मैंने घर आकर नाश्ता किया ।	१. २.	
मैं स्कूल जाकर दोस्तों से मिलकर क्लास में गयी ।	१. २. ३.	
मैंने क्लास करके खाना खाया ।	१. २.	
मैंने घर आकर आराम किया ।	१. २.	
मैंने रोटी पकायी और खाना खाया ।	१. २.	
मैंने खाना खाकर टी. वी. देखा ।	१. २.	
मैं टी. वी. देखकर सोने गयी ।	१. २.	
मैं कल सुबह उठकर फिर से यही करूँगी ।	१. २.	

धन्यवाद !

8.8 Conjunct Verb



Conjunct Verb with करना Video

Lecture: [Conjunct Verb](#)

In English, one can use a noun or an adjective like a verb. To use a noun or adjective as a verb in Hindi, one can combine verbs such as करना and होना with them. These combinations cannot be used to create a verb which already exists. However, Hindi does not always have a single verb equivalent to English verbs: such as *to close* (बंद करना).

	Adjectival conjunct verb	Nominal conjunct verb
Forms	Adjective + करना	Noun + करना
Properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Conjunct verbs with करना act like a transitive verb and hence the subject must appear with the <i>-ne</i> (-ने) marker when the conjunct verb comes in the perfective tense (or express a completed action). Conjunct verb with करना focuses on the doer of an action. Negative sentence: To form a negative conjunct verb, the word नहीं should be placed between the noun/adjective and the verb करना, in a standard word order. Agreement system: In a conjunct verb, the noun/adjective part of the conjunct verb remains unchanged and the verb करना agrees with the potential subject/object in the sentence. Based on the agreement, the verb करना changes its form. 	

Examples of Adjectival Conjunct Verbs

- मैंने अपना कमरा साफ़ किया। “I cleaned my room.”
- तुम अपना घर गंदा करते हो। “You make your house dirty.”
- वे कार्यक्रम की तैयारी कर रहे हैं। “They are preparing for the program.”

Examples of Nominal Conjunct Verbs

Nominal conjunct verbs can be further divided into two categories:

(a) one that requires a connector such as *kaa/kii*.

Examples of nouns that require connectors:

- हमने उसकी मदद की | “We helped him/her.”
- राहुल ने गाड़ी की मरम्मत की | “Rahul fixed the car.”
- छात्र हिन्दी का अभ्यास कर रहे हैं | “Students are practicing Hindi.”
- राहुल ने घर की सफाई की | “Rahul cleaned a house.”

(b) one that does not require any connector.

Examples of nouns that do not require connectors:

- राम ने मुझे क्षमा किया | “Rahul forgave me.”
- बच्चे शोर कर रहे हैं | “Children are making noise.”
- मैंने अपनी माँ को फोन किया | “I called my mother.”

Conjunct Verb with होना

Conjunct verbs with होना are intransitive verbs and hence the subject must not appear with the -ne (-ने) marker when the conjunct verb comes in the perfective tense (or expresses a completed action). All the conjunct verbs with करना also have a construction with होना in which the doer of the action is usually not expressed.

Adjective + होना

Examples of adjectival conjunct verbs

- मेरा कमरा साफ हुआ | “My room got cleaned.”
- उसका कमरा गंदा हुआ | “His house became dirty.”
- कार्यक्रम की तैयारी हो रही है | “Preparation for the program is taking place.”

Noun + होना

Like करना conjunct verb, Nominal conjunct verbs with होना can also be further divided into two categories

(a) one that requires connector such as kaa/kii.

Examples of nouns that require connectors:

- उसकी मदद हुई | “His/her help happened (literally)./ S/he was helped.”
- गाड़ी की मरम्मत हुई | “The fixing of the car happened (literally)./ The car was fixed.”
- हिन्दी का अभ्यास हो रहा है | “Practice of Hindi is happening (literally)./Hindi is being practiced.”

(b) one that does not require any connector.

Examples of nouns that do not require connectors:

- यहाँ शोर हो रहा है | “It is noisy here.”
- कार्यक्रम खत्म हो गया | “The program ended.”
- भूल हो गयी | “The mistake happened.”

Activity 1

Please write two sentences with each of the following conjunct verbs.

फ़ैसला करना “To decide”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
साफ़ करना “To clean”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
वापस करना “To return”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
ख़त्म करना “To finish”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
कम करना “To reduce”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
ठीक करना “To fix up”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
तैयार करना “To prepare”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
शुरू करना “To start”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
मरम्मत करना “To repair”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
x की मदद करना “To help X”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
x का इंतज़ार करना “To wait for X”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
x की कोशिश करना “To try X”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
x का अभ्यास करना “To practice X”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.

Activity 2

Please write a response of these following personalized questions and then record yourself.



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basichindi/?p=1367#h5p-131>

धन्यवाद !

8.9 Subjunctive



Subjunctive Mood

Instructor Video: [Subjunctive](#)

Subjunctive verb forms are generally used to convey desirability, possibility, probability, uncertainty or a wish about some future action or event.

Structure

If we delete the suffix – गा, गे or गी from the future verb forms then the subjunctive verb form is remaining.

Future	Subjunctive
मँ खाऊँगी। “I will eat.”	शायद मँ खाऊँ। “Perhaps, I may eat.”
हम पढ़ेंगे। “We will study.”	शायद हम पढ़ें। “Perhaps we may study.”
शायद वह बाज़ार जाएगा। “Perhaps he will go to the market.”	शायद वह बाज़ार जाए। “Perhaps he may go to the market.”

Notes:

- The subjunctive form of a verb remains the same regardless of whether it refers to a masculine or a feminine subject.
- Three verbs that are irregular forms in future (लेना *to take*, देना *to give* and होना *to be*) are also have irregular in the subjunctive case.

Pronouns	Future			Subjunctive		
	होना	लेना	देना	होना	लेना	देना
मैं	होऊँगा	लूँगा	दूँगा	होऊँ	लूँ	दूँ
हम	होगे	लेंगे	देंगे	हों	लें	दें
तू	होगा	लेगा	देगा	हो	ले	दे
तुम	होगे	लोगे	दोगे	हो	लो	दो
आप	होगे	लेंगे	देंगे	हों	लें	दें
यह	होगा	लेगा	देगा	हो	ले	दे
वह	होगा	लेगा	देगा	हो	ले	दे
ये	होगे	लेंगे	देंगे	हों	लें	दें
वे	होगे	लेंगे	देंगे	हों	लें	दें

For examples:

- **Future:** शायद वह कल दल्लि जाएगा / जाएगी। “Perhaps he / she will go to Delhi tomorrow.”
- **Subjunctive:** शायद वह कल दल्लि जाए। “He / She may go to Delhi tomorrow.”
- **Future:** अगले साल भी मैं हिन्दी पढूँगी। “I will study Hindi next year too.”
- **Subjunctive:** शायद अगले साल भी मैं हिन्दी पढूँगी। “Perhaps I may study Hindi next year.”

Negation of Subjunctive

The negative particle used with the subjunctive is always न.

- शायद वह कल दल्लि न जाए। “Perhaps S/he may not go to Delhi tomorrow.”
- शायद आज वर्षा न हो। “Perhaps it may not rain today.”

Subjunctive Case in Imperfective and Perfective Aspects

In order to use subjunctive case in imperfective and perfective aspect, a subjunctive form of होना is added as an auxiliary to the habitual, Progressive, or perfective forms of the main verb.

Simple Subjunctive

- शायद हम दल्लि जायें “Perhaps we may go to Delhi.”
- शायद बच्चे क्रिकेट खेलें। “Perhaps children may play cricket.”

Subjunctive Habitual

- शायद वह जयपुर में हिन्दी पढता हो। “Perhaps he learns/ used to learn Hindi in Jaipur.”
- शायद वह सारी रात पढाई करती हो। “Perhaps, she studies whole night.”

Subjunctive Progressive

- शायद हम दिल्ली जा रहे हों। “Perhaps we may be going to Delhi.”
- शायद मेरे दोस्त अभी कोई फ़िल्म देख रहे हों। “Perhaps my friends may be watching some movie.”

Subjunctive Perfective

- शायद उसने वहाँ काम किया हो। “Perhaps S/he may have worked there.”
- शायद उसने तुम से कुछ कहा हो। “Perhaps s/he may have said something to you.”

Uses of Subjunctive Case

To express desirability

- चलो आज कहीं बाहर चलो। “Let’s go out somewhere today.”
- चलो आज हिन्दी में बात करें। “Let’s talk in Hindi today.”

To express advice/permission (may, should)

- मैं अन्दर आऊँ? “May I Come in?”
- मैं घर जाऊँ? “May I go home?”

Let’s Constructions

- चलएँ घूमने चलो! “Let’s go for a walk.”
- चलएँ खाना खायें! “Let’s eat food.”

Most polite form of request

- आप मेरे साथ आएँ। “Please come with me.”
- अब खाना खाएँ। “Let’s eat now.”

To express probability/uncertainty

- शायद आज बारिश हो। “Perhaps, it may rain today.”
- शायद कल वह यहाँ आएँ। “Perhaps, s/he may come here tomorrow.”

To express wishes/blessings/curses

- जन्मदनि मुबारक हो! “Wish you a happy birthday!”
- नया साल मुबारक हो! “Wish you a happy new year!”

Complex Sentences: Uses of Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses

Subjunctive case can be used in subordinate clause to express desire and possibility.

For examples:

मैं/ हम/ तुम/ आप/ वह/ वे चाहता/ चाहती/ चाहते/ चाहती हूँ/ है/ हो/ है कि...

- मैं चाहती हूँ कि आप हिन्दी पढ़ें। “I want you to study Hindi.”
- माँ चाहती है कि मैं डॉक्टर बनूँ। “Mother wants me to become a doctor.”

मेरी/ तुम्हारी/ आपकी/ उसकी/ उनकी इच्छा है कि...

- मेरी माँ की इच्छा है कि मैं हिन्दुस्तान जाऊँ। “My mother wants me to go to India.”
- उसकी इच्छा है कि हम मठाई खायें। “S/he wants us to eat sweets.”

More expressions

	Expressions	Examples
1	कितना अच्छा हो कि...	कितना अच्छा हो कि वह वापस आए! “It would be great if she came back!”
2	काश कि...	काश कि..... आज छुट्टी हो जाए। “If only today would be holiday.”
3	X को चाहिये कि...	तुम्हें चाहिये कि तुम गरीबों की मदद करो। “You ought to / should help the poor.”
4	यह जरूरी / आवश्यक है कि...	यह जरूरी/आवश्यक है कि हम गरीबों की मदद करें। “It is necessary for us to help the poor.”
5	मेरा खयाल/ वचिर (opinion) है कि...	मेरा खयाल/ वचिर (opinion) है कि आज तुम कहीं न जाओ। “I think you should not go anywhere today.”
6	यह मुमकिन/संभव (possible) है कि...	मुमकिन/संभव है कि वे लोग अगले साल पाकिस्तान जायें। “It is possible that they will go to Pakistan.”
7	यह हो सकता है कि.....	हो सकता है कि कल वह आये। “It may be that she will come tomorrow.”

Other constructions requires subjunctive with conjunctions

ताकि/ जसिसे कि.....(so that)

- हिन्दी पढ़ो ताकि/ जसिसे कि भारत में हिन्दी बोल सको। “Learn Hindi so that you can speak Hindi in India.”

The subjunctive of possibility is common in Conditional (if.....then construction)

- अगर तुम कहो तो मैं भी तुम्हारे साथ चलूँ(गा)। “If you say then I will also come with you.”

In the sentence with जब तक.....तब the subjunctive form is generally used (if the reference is to a future action)

- जब तक मैं न बुलाऊँ, (तब तक) अंदर न आना। “Don’t come in until I call you.”

The subjunctive is used in “as if/ as though” clauses that indicate supposition or imagined actions or situations, particularly after expressions such as “it seems as if / as though....” or “it appears as if / as though.”

- हमें ऐसा लगा जैसे हम वहाँ अजनबी हो। “It seemed to us / we felt as if we were strangers there.”
- वह इतनी सुंदर है मानो गुलाब हो। “She is as pretty (that you would think of her) as though she were a rose.”

Activity 1

	Please write two subjunctive sentences in Hindi that express		
(a)	desirability	1.	
		2.	
(b)	advice/permission	1.	
		2.	
(c)	Let’s construction	1.	
		2.	
(d)	polite form of request	1.	
		2.	
(e)	probability/uncertainty	1.	
		2.	
(f)	Blessing/Curse/Wishes	1.	
		2.	

Activity 2

(a) **Food Recipe:** Please write a recipe of your favorite Indian/South Asian food. You have done this before using imperative sentences. Here you have to write the recipe using subjunctive sentences.

(b) **Giving Direction:** Imagine that you have invited a friend to your house for a party. Your friend does not know your the direction from her/his house to your house. Please write a direction in Hindi. [Hint: Please use subjunctive sentences].

(c) **Good wishes:**



An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/basic hindi/?p=1369#h5p-138>

धन्यवाद !

8.10 Cultural Notes and Extra/ Optional Online Materials



CULTURAL NOTES

	Topics	Explanations
1.	Good Morning/Afternoon/ Evening/Night/Day	In English, we generally wish each other good morning, good afternoon, good evening, good night, and good day. But in India and South Asian, native speakers, generally speaking, do not wish each other in these ways. People generally say नमस्ते, प्रणाम, राम-राम, etc.
2.	Instruction and polite request	Generally, when you learn Hindi, your instructor, including me, teaches you to use आप form of imperative construction to express polite request/instruction. However, when you travel to India and South Asia, native speakers typically use subjunctive form to express polite request/instruction. You can check if you watch any recipe video by a native Hindi speaker. All the written instruction on road-side and elsewhere in Hindi are also written in subjunctive.
3.	Conjunct Verb	In this chapter, you learned about conjunct verb. You learned that how we can take noun/adjective/adverb and add करना/होना to form a conjunct verb. However, these days, the influence of English on Hindi language is significant. You may hear native speakers using conjunct verbs with English nouns/adjectives/adverbs + करना For example: text/message/phone/email/google + करना
4.	Letter writing	Letter writing was very prominent in India. However, after the new development in technologies, and telecommunication boom, people bought mobile phones and now the letter writing does not happen very much.
5.	Festivals	Indian festivals can be divided in two parts, namely, national festival, and regional festival. National festivals are independence day (August 15th), republic day (January 26th), and Gandhi's birthday (October 2nd). On these public/national festivals, the whole country enjoys break from work. All the offices, colleges, schools, and other institutions are closed. A few examples of regional festivals are holi, pongal, baisakhi, onam, etc. On regional festival day, certain regions of the country observe break from work.

EXTRA/OPTIONAL MATERIALS

Holi festival:

1. [Holi Pagri](#)
2. [Holi Lathmar](#)
3. [Holi Baithi 1](#)
4. [Holi Baithi 2](#)

Hindi song that uses beautiful mixture of subjunctive and future in conditional sentences.

[Agar tum mil jao](#)

धन्यवाद !